



## Infectious disease

الأمراض المعدية

The current threat is caused by an **infectious disease**.

الخطر الحالي سببه مرض معدٍ.

## Pandemic

(وباء) مرض واسع وسريع الانتشار

The world was not prepared to face a **pandemic**.

العالم لم يكن مستعداً لمواجهة وباء.

## In the midst

(في منتصف حاجة / في وسط حاجة) (سواء فعل أو شيء)

We are **in the midst** of a pandemic.

نحن في منتصف وباء.

## Healthcare workers

عمال الرعاية الصحية

In the midst of the current crisis, **healthcare workers** are the real heroes.

في وسط الأزمة الحالية، عمال الرعاية الصحية هم الأبطال الحقيقيون.



### Implant

يزرع/يغرز شيء (زرع شيء داخل الجسم عن طريق عملية طبية)

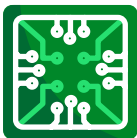
His dog had a microchip **implant** to track him in case he got lost.

كلبه لديه رقاقة صغيرة مزروعة لتتبعه في حالة فقدانه.

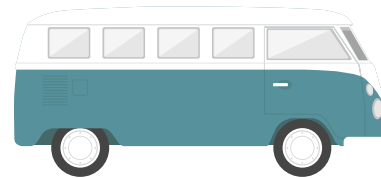
### Bus



### Chip



### Microbus



### Microchip



### Strain

سلالة

Scientists have discovered a new **strain** of the virus which is much more dangerous.

اكتشف العلماء نوع جديد من الفيروس أخطر بكثير.



### Patent

براءة اختراع

You cannot obtain a **patent** for something that you haven't invented.

لا يمكنك الحصول على براءة اختراع لشيء لم تختعه.

### Vaccine

لقاح

A **vaccine** is yet to be discovered by scientists.

لم يكتشف العلماء لقاحًا بعد.

...is yet to

ليس بعد

He **is yet to** come = he didn't come yet



Over the past decade, Bill Gates has been warning about the lack of preparation and systems in place to deal with **infectious disease** threats that could lead to a **pandemic**. Now that the world is actually **in the midst** of a pandemic, some people on social media have been accusing Gates of starting it. Gates has been - on multiple occasions - pushing for more efforts to prevent this possibility, such as in his 2015 TED talk. On the fifth of April, A lot of people started attacking Bill on Instagram after his post thanking **healthcare workers**. There were some accusations that he wants to **implant** microchips into people to track them. Another claim was that Bill Gates and like-minded desire to reduce earth's population - which explains why he would start the current pandemic. Believe it or not, a coronavirus **strain** is **patented** by The Pirbright Institute, which is partially funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation.

According to some activists on social media, the entire pandemic is just to create a need for a **vaccine** from which Gates will subsequently profit. What do you think? Is our beloved Bill behind all of what we are going through now? Or is he simply a victim of conspiracy theorists who have a bit too much time on their hands? Let me know what you think in the comments below.







Over the past decade, Bill Gates has been warning about the lack of preparation and systems in place to deal with infectious disease threats that could lead to a pandemic.

على مدى العقد الماضي، كان بيل جيتس يحذر من قلة الاستعداد والأنظمة الموجودة للتعامل مع تهديدات الأمراض المعدية التي يمكن أن تؤدي إلى وباء.

Now that the world is actually in the midst of a pandemic, some people on social media have been accusing Gates of starting it.

الآن بعد أن أصبح العالم بالفعل في خضم وباء، اتهم بعض الأشخاص على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي جيتس ببدء هذا الوباء.

Gates has been - on multiple occasions - pushing for more efforts to prevent this possibility, such as in his 2015 TED talk

كان جيتس - في مناسبات متعددة - يدفع من أجل بذل المزيد من الجهود لمنع هذا الاحتمال ، كما في حديثه في TED عام 2015

On the fifth of April, A lot of people started attacking Bill on Instagram after his post thanking healthcare workers.

في الخامس من أبريل ، بدأ الكثير من الناس في مهاجمة بيل على إنستغرام بعد منشوره شاكراً عاملي الرعاية الصحية.

There were some accusations that he wants to implant microchips into people to track them.

كانت هناك بعض الاتهامات بأنه يريد زرع رقائق صغيرة في الناس لتعقبهم.



Another claim was that Bill Gates and like-minded desire to reduce earth's population - which explains why he would start the current pandemic.

هناك ادعاء آخر وهو أن بيل جيتس يرغب في تقليل عدد سكان الأرض - وهو ما يفسر بدأه الوباء الحالي.

Believe it or not, a coronavirus strain is patented by The Pirbright Institute, which is partially funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation.

صدق أو لا تصدق، هناك سلالة من فيروس كورونا مسجلة ببراءة اختراع من قبل معهد Pirbright، الذي تموله جزئياً مؤسسة بيل وميليندا جيتس.

According to some activists on social media, the entire pandemic is just to create a need for a vaccine from which Gates will subsequently profit.

وفقا لبعض النشطاء على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، فإن الوباء بأكمله هو لمجرد خلق حاجة للقاح يستفيد منه جيتس في وقت لاحق.

What do you think?

ماذا تعتقد؟

Is our beloved Bill behind all of what we are going through now?

هل محبوبنا بيل وراء كل ما يحدث الآن؟

Or is he simply a victim of conspiracy theorists who have a bit too much time on their hands?

أم هو بكل بساطة ضحية أصحاب نظريات المؤامرة الذين لديهم الكثير من الوقت؟

Let me know what you think in the comments below.

قولوا لي رأيكم في التعليقات بالأسفل.



## Bartering

مقايضة

The company is prepared to **barter** for foreign products.

الشركة مستعدة للمقايضة مقابل المنتجات الأجنبية.

## Eventually

في النهاية / أخيراً

Eventually, it became clear that he needs to **re-evaluate** his decision.

في النهاية، أصبح من الواضح أنه بحاجة إلى إعادة تقييم قراره.

## Inconvenient

غير مريح أو غير ملائم

She called me at an **inconvenient** time.

قامت بالاتصال بي في وقتٍ غير ملائم.

## Vault

مبنى آمن يشبه الخزينة ولكنه كبير

Kings used to keep their valuables in **vaults**.

اعتاد الملوك إبقاء أشياءهم الثمينة في خزائن.



Before the invention of money, people used to make transactions by **bartering**. That is the exchange of goods and services between two or more people without the use of money.

However, there were some difficulties in using this method. An example of this would be, if I had an excess of bananas and I wanted to cross the river, how would I pay for this service? I'd have to find someone who owns a boat, and is willing to exchange his service for some of my bananas.

Since it would be difficult to consistently align everybody's needs with mine, the use of bartering was **eventually** replaced by the use of metals, animals, sea shells and anything with an agreed upon value.

This eventually led to rare and precious metals such as Silver and Gold being used in trade. People started making coins out of those metals and using those coins as an accepted form of currency to pay for goods or services. In time, the use of coins became **inconvenient**, especially when it came to situations in which we needed to use large amounts of coins.

Since it became harder to make large transactions using coins, the need for a different method increased. This came into the form of IOU, which is an abbreviation for "I owe you". The way that worked is that you'd carry your gold coins and deliver them to a trusted party who owns a very well guarded **vault**. They would count your gold coins and issue you an IOU document stating the amount of coins you have in their vault with the promise that you or anybody who holds such a document could collect the stated amount of gold any time. For a small interest, of course.

That way, it would be much easier for you to pay for goods and services without the need to carry large amounts of coin. It was much safer, too.





The IOUs started to gain a value of their own. Which led the providers of those IOUs to realise that they could print out more of those IOUs without the need to have a gold or silver coin back up.

A devilish idea was then born, where would it take the world from here onward? That's what we're going to explore in future episodes.

Before the invention of money, people used to make transactions by bartering.  
قبل اختراع المال، اعتاد الناس على إجراء المعاملات عن طريق المقايضة.

That is the exchange of goods and services between two or more people without the use of money.  
وهذا يعني تبادل السلع والخدمات بين شخصين أو أكثر دون استخدام المال.

However, there were some difficulties in using this method.  
ومع ذلك، كانت هناك بعض الصعوبات في استخدام هذه الطريقة.

An example of this would be, if I had an excess of bananas and I wanted to cross the river, how would I pay for this service?  
مثال على ذلك، إذا كان لدي كمية زائدة من الموز وأردت عبور النهر، كيف سأدفع مقابل هذه الخدمة؟

I'd have to find someone who owns a boat, and is willing to exchange his service for some of my bananas.  
يجب أن أجد شخصًا يمتلك قاربًا ومستعد لتبادل خدمته مقابل بعض الموز الخاص بي.



Since it would be difficult to consistently align everybody's needs with mine, the use of bartering was eventually replaced by the use of metals, animals, sea shells and anything with an agreed upon value.

نظرًا لأنه من الصعب التوفيق بين احتياجاتي واحتياجات الجميع بصورة مستمرة، تم استبدال استخدام المقايضة في نهاية المطاف باستخدام المعادن والحيوانات والأصداف وأي شيء بقيمة متفق عليها.

This eventually led to rare and precious metals such as Silver and Gold being used in trade.

أدى هذا في النهاية إلى استخدام المعادن النادرة والثرينة مثل الفضة والذهب في التجارة.

People started making coins out of those metals and using those coins as an accepted form of currency to pay for goods or services.

بدأ الناس في صنع عملات معدنية من تلك المعادن واستخدام تلك العملات كشكل مقبول لدفع ثمن السلع أو الخدمات.

In time, the use of coins became inconvenient, especially when it came to situations in which we needed to use large amounts of coins.

مع مرور الوقت، أصبح استخدام العملات المعدنية غير مريح، خاصةً عندما يتعلق الأمر بالحالات التي نحتاج فيها إلى استخدام كميات كبيرة منها.

Since it became harder to make large transactions using coins, the need for a different method increased.

نظرًا لأنه أصبح من الصعب إجراء معاملات كبيرة باستخدام العملات المعدنية، زادت الحاجة إلى طريقة مختلفة.

This came into the form of IOU, which is an abbreviation for "I owe you".

جاء هذا في شكل IOU، وهو اختصار لـ "I owe you" "أنا مدين لك".

The way that worked is that you'd carry your gold coins and deliver them to a trusted party who owns a very well guarded vault.

كيفية عمل هذه الطريقة هي أنك تحمل عملاتك الذهبية وتسلمها إلى طرف موثوق به يمتلك قبوًا/خزانة شديدة الحراسة.



They would count your gold coins and issue you an IOU document stating the amount of coins you have in their vault with the promise that you or anybody who holds such a document could collect the stated amount of gold any time. For a small interest, of course.

يقوموا بحساب عملاتك الذهبية ويصدروا لك وثيقة IOU توضح كمية العملات المعدنية الموجودة في قبوهم/خزانتهم مع الوعد بأنك أو أي شخص لديه هذه الوثيقة يمكن أن يجمع المبلغ المذكور من الذهب في أي وقت. مقابل فائدة قليلة، بالطبع.

That way, it would be much easier for you to pay for goods and services without the need to carry large amounts of coin.

بهذه الطريقة، يكون من الأسهل بالنسبة لك دفع ثمن السلع والخدمات دون الحاجة إلى حمل كميات كبيرة من العملات المعدنية.

It was much safer, too.

وبطريقة أكثر أماناً أيضاً.

The IOUs started to gain a value of their own.

بدأت ال IOU بأن تكتسب قيمة خاصة بها.

Which led the providers of those IOUs to realise that they could print out more of those IOUs without the need to have a gold or silver coin back up.

الأمر الذي دفع مزودي تلك الصكوك إلى إدراك أنه يمكنهم طباعة المزيد منها الصكوك دون الحاجة إلى احتياط من العملات الذهبية أو الفضية.

A devilish idea was then born, where would it take the world from here onward? That's what we're going to explore in future episodes.

ثم ولدت فكرة شيطانية، أين ستأخذ هذه الفكرة العالم من هنا فصاعداً؟ هذا ما سنستكشفه في الحلقات القادمة.



## Distinguished

بارز - متميز

Our **distinguished** guest will present his research at 9:00 pm.

سيقدم ضيفنا المميز بحثه في الساعة 9:00 مساءً.

## Quantum theory

نظرية الكم

**Quantum theory** is the theoretical basis of modern physics.

النظرية الكمية هي الأساس النظري للفيزياء الحديثة.

## Radiation

إشعاع

Exposure to high levels of **radiation** is dangerous to humans.

التعرض لمستويات عالية من الإشعاع خطير على البشر.

## Eulogize

ينعى - يمدح في شخص بعد وفاته

He faced tremendous difficulty **eulogizing** his own father.

واجه صعوبة هائلة في تأييد / نعي والده.





On the 11th of July 1898, in Damietta, a man that would soon after change our very understanding of the world, and shake up the scientific scene at the time - was born.



That was none other than Dr. Ali Moustafa Mosharafa. Dr. Moustafa published 25 original papers in **distinguished** scientific journals about **quantum theory**, the theory of relativity, and the relation between **radiation** and matter. He published around 12 scientific books about relativity and mathematics. His books, on the theory of relativity, were translated into English, French, German and Polish. He also translated 10 books of astronomy and mathematics into Arabic.

He died on the 15th of January 1950, under mysterious circumstances and the case was never subject to proper investigation.

Albert Einstein **eulogized** his death saying: "I cannot believe that Mosharafa is dead, he is alive through his research. We are in need of his talents, it is a great loss, he was a genius. I used to follow up his research in atomic energy, definitely he is one of the best scientists in physics."

On the 11th of July 1898, in Damietta, a man that would soon after change our very understanding of the world, and shake up the scientific scene at the time - was born.

في 11 يوليو 1898 ، في دمياط ، ولد رجل كان على وشك أن يغير مفهومنا عن العالم بشكل كلي، ويهز الساحة العلمية في ذلك الوقت.

That was none other than Dr. Ali Moustafa Mosharafa. Dr. Moustafa published 25 original papers in **distinguished** scientific journals about **quantum theory**, the theory of relativity, and the relation between **radiation** and matter.

لم يكن ذلك سوى د. علي مصطفى مشرفة. نشر الدكتور مصطفى 25 بحثاً في مجلات علمية متميزة حول نظرية الكم ، ونظرية النسبية ، والعلاقة بين الإشعاع والمادة.



He published around 12 scientific books about relativity and mathematics.

نشر حوالي 12 كتابًا علميًا حول النسبية والرياضيات.

His books, on the theory of relativity, were translated into English, French, German and Polish.

وقد ترجمت كتبه حول نظرية النسبية إلى الإنجليزية والفرنسية والألمانية والبولندية.

He also translated 10 books of astronomy and mathematics into Arabic.

كما ترجم 10 كتب في علم الفلك والرياضيات إلى اللغة العربية.

He died on the 15th of January 1950, under mysterious circumstances and the case was never subject to proper investigation.

توفي في 15 يناير 1950 ، في ظروف غامضة ولم تخضع القضية للتحقيق المناسب.

Albert Einstein **eulogized** his death saying: "I cannot believe that Mosharafa is dead, he is alive through his research.

ونعى ألبرت أينشتاين وفاته قائلاً: لا أستطيع أن أصدق أن مشرفة مات ، فهو حي من خلال بحثه.

We are in need of his talents, it is a great loss, he was a genius.

نحن بحاجة إلى مواهبه ، إنها خسارة كبيرة ، كان عبقرياً.

I used to follow up his research in atomic energy, definitely he is one of the best scientists in physics."

كنت أتابع بحثه في الطاقة الذرية ، وهو بالتأكيد أحد أفضل العلماء في الفيزياء.



## Epidemic

وباء يصيب بلد أو مكان معين

## Pandemic

وباء ينتشر بشكل عالمي

## Infectious

عدوة لا تنتقل مباشرةً من شخص إلى آخر

## Contagious

عدوة تنتقل مباشرةً من شخص إلى آخر

## Encounter

مقابلة / مواجهة

They **encounter** each other every morning.

هم يقابلون بعضهم البعض كل صباح.

## Straw man fallacy

مغالطة رجل القش

## Straw

قش

## Fallacy

مغالطة

Be careful not to use the **straw man fallacy** in your conversations.

احذر من استخدام مغالطة رجل القش في محادثاتك.

## Premise

فرضي

He misunderstood the main **premise**.

لقد أساء فهم الفرضية الرئيسية.



## Understaffed

نقص عمالة (قليل العمال)

It is dangerous to have the hospital **understaffed**.

من الخطير أن تكون المستشفى من نقص العمالة.

## Distort

تشويه أو تحريف

The media has to retain their integrity and not **distort** the facts.

على الإعلام أن يحتفظ بنزاهته وعدم تشويه الحقائق.

## Intentional

مقصود

His wrongdoing was not **intentional**.

خطأه لم يكن مقصوداً

## Restate

يعني يعيد توضيح أو يعيد صياغة شيء

Could you **restate** your argument one more time?

هل يمكنك إعادة توضيح حجتك مرة أخرى؟



Today we'll talk about one of the most common fallacies that you are most likely to **encounter** on a regular basis in day to day conversations.

That is the **straw man fallacy**. The straw man is a form of argument and an informal fallacy based around misrepresenting or **distorting** someone's argument to make it easier to attack. Let's take a look at an example to help us understand this fallacy better.



Person A presents the following argument:

**Premise 1:** Schools are **understaffed**

**Premise 2:** Having **understaffed** schools leads to a weaker state of education

**Conclusion:** We should put more money into education

Person B responds saying the following:

Person B: I can't believe that you hate our country so much that you want to leave it defenceless by cutting military funds.

Do you think that's a good response to Person A's argument? -No, it's not, because Person A didn't suggest cutting military funds nor did they say that they hate their country. Person B **distorted** Person A's argument to make it easier to attack.

Now that you know what a straw man is, there's one thing to note, that it is usually not **intentional**. Sometimes people just misunderstand something that you say. A good way to respond if you're faced with a straw man argument, is to simply point it out by saying something like: "I didn't make that argument, you're attacking an argument that I didn't make. Let me **restate** the argument that I actually did make" and then then **restate** your argument.

What do you think? Have you had a similar conversation with someone recently? Let me know what you think in the comments below.



Today we'll talk about one of the most common fallacies that you are most likely to **encounter** on a regular basis in day to day conversations.

سنحدث اليوم عن إحدى المغالطات الأكثر شيوعًا التي من المرجح أن تواجهها بشكل منتظم في المحادثات اليومية

That is the **straw man fallacy**. The straw man is a form of argument and an informal fallacy based around misrepresenting or **distorting** someone's argument to make it easier to attack.

وهي مغالطة رجل القش. رجل القش هو شكل من أشكال الجدل والمغالطة غير الرسمية التي تتأسس حول تحريف أو تشويه حجة شخص ما لكي يكون من السهل مهاجمتها

Let's take a look at an example to help us understand this fallacy better.

دعونا نلقي نظرة على مثال لمساعدتنا على فهم هذه المغالطة بشكل أفضل

Person A presents the following argument:

يقدم الشخص «أ» الحجة التالية:

**Premise 1:** Schools are **understaffed**

الفرضية 1: المدارس بها نقص عمالة

**Premise 2:** Having **understaffed** schools leads to a weaker state of education

الفرضية 2: يؤدي نقص العمالة بالمدارس إلى ضعف في مستوى التعليم

**Conclusion:** We should put more money into education

الاستنتاج: يجب أن نخصص المزيد من الأموال للتعليم

Person B responds saying the following:

يستجيب الشخص «ب» قائلاً ما يلي:

Person B: I can't believe that you hate our country so much that you want to leave it defenceless by cutting military funds.

الشخص «ب»: لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك تكره بلادنا لدرجة أنك تريد أن تتركها بلا حماية عن طريق قطع الأموال العسكرية

Do you think that's a good response to Person A's argument?

هل تعتقد أن هذا رد جيد على حجة الشخص «أ»؟



-No, it's not, because Person A didn't suggest cutting military funds nor did they say that they hate their country.

- لا ، ليس كذلك ، لأن الشخص «أ» لم يقترح قطع الأموال العسكرية ولم يقل أنه يكره بلدهما

Person B **distorted** Person A's argument to make it easier to attack.

قام الشخص «ب» بتحريف حجة الشخص «أ» ليكون من السهل الهجوم عليها

Now that you know what a straw man is, there's one thing to note, that it is usually not **intentional**.

الآن بعد أن عرفت ما هو رجل القش، هناك شيء يجب عليك ملاحظته، وهو أنه عادة ما يكون غير مقصود.

Sometimes people just misunderstand something that you say.

في بعض الأحيان يسيء الناس فهم شيء ما تقوله.

A good way to respond if you're faced with a straw man argument, is to simply point it out by saying something like:

طريقة جيدة للاستجابة إذا كنت ووجهت بحجة رجل قش، وهي ببساطة توضيح ذلك بأن تقول شيء مثل:

"I didn't make that argument, you're attacking an argument that I didn't make.

هذه ليست الحجة التي قمت بها، أنت تهاجم حجة لم أقم بها

Let me **restate** the argument that I actually did make"

دعني أعيد توضيح الحجة التي قمت بها

and then then **restate** your argument.

ثم أعد صياغة حجتك.

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Have you had a similar conversation with someone recently?

هل أجريت محادثة مماثلة مع شخص مؤخرًا؟

Let me know what you think in the comments below.

قولوا لي رأيكم في التعليقات بالأسفل



### Enroll

يتم تقييده / يتم ادراج اسمه

He wanted to **enroll** in the faculty of commerce at Cairo University.

أراد أن يقيد نفسه في كلية التجارة بجامعة القاهرة

### Sophomore

طالب في السنة الثانية لدراسته

He had the most difficulty during his **sophomore** year.

واجه أكثر صعوبة خلال سنته الثانية.

He was born on the 14th of May, 1984, in New York. He was born into a well-educated family and developed an interest in computer programming at a young age. You might know him from his most famous creation, the largely used social media website, Facebook.

That is Mark Zuckerberg. At the age of 12, he built a software program that he called "ZuckNet" that allowed all the computers between their house and his father's dental office to communicate with each other.

Once his parents noticed his early success, they got him a computer programming tutor while he was still in high school, and they enrolled him in a prep school in New Hampshire. After graduating from prep school, Zuckerberg **enrolled** at Harvard University at which he quickly became known as the go-to computer programmer on campus. By his **sophomore** year, he had already built two other programs. Later on, Zuckerberg and his friends partnered up to create what we now know as Facebook. But that's a story for another day.







He was born on the 14th of May, 1984, in New York.

ولد في 14 مايو 1984 في نيويورك

He was born into a well-educated family and developed an interest in computer programming at a young age.

ولد في عائلة متعلمة وطور اهتمام ببرمجة الكمبيوتر في سن مبكرة.

You might know him from his most famous creation, the largely used social media website, Facebook.

قد تعرفه من أشهر ابتكاراته، وهو موقع التواصل الاجتماعي الأكثر استخدامًا ، الفيسبوك.

That is Mark Zuckerberg.

هذا هو مارك زوكربيرج.

At the age of 12, he built a software program that he called «ZuckNet» that allowed all the computers between their house and his father's dental office to communicate with each other.

في سن الثانية عشرة ، قام ببناء برنامج حاسوبي أطلق عليه اسم «ZuckNet» يسمح لجميع أجهزة الكمبيوتر بين منزلهم ومكتب أبيه لطب الأسنان بالتواصل مع بعضهم البعض.

Once his parents noticed his early success, they got him a computer programming tutor while he was still in high school, and they **enrolled** him in a prep school in New Hampshire.

بمجرد أن لاحظ والديه نجاحه المبكر، احضروا له مدرس لبرمجة الكمبيوتر بينما كان لا يزال في المدرسة الثانوية ، وألحقوه بمدرسة تحضيرية في نيو هامبشاير.

After graduating from prep school, Zuckerberg **enrolled** at Harvard University at which he quickly became known as the go-to computer programmer on campus.

بعد تخرجه من المدرسة التحضيرية، التحق زوكربيرج بجامعة هارفارد حيث أصبح يُعرف باسم مبرمج الكمبيوتر الذي يذهب إلى الحرم الجامعي.

By his **sophomore** year, he had already built two other programs.

بحلول سنته الثانية، كان قد بنى برنامجين آخرين.



Later on, Zuckerberg and his friends partnered up to create what we now know as Facebook.

في وقت لاحق ، تعاون زوكربيرج وأصدقاؤه لإنشاء ما نعرفه الآن باسم فيسبوك.

But that's a story for another day.

لكن هذه قصة ليوم آخر.



## Conception

بداية / ولادة

He directed the project from conception to completion.

قام بتوجيه المشروع من بدايته حتى اكتماله.

## Credited with

ينسب له فضل عمل شيء

He's credited with creating the first computer.

له الفضل في إنشاء أول جهاز كمبيوتر.

## Conflict

نزاع

I don't want to be a part of your conflict.

لا أريد أن أكون طرف في نزاعكم.

## Prompt

يحث / يدفع

The new evidence prompted an investigation.

دفعت الأدلة الجديدة التحقيق



Today we'll talk about one of the most widely known tech companies to date. Early on after it's conception, it produced one of the 3 computers credited with creating the home computer market. Until that point, computers were not accessible to the average consumer. 1977 was the first time they were marketed to consumers as affordable and accessible computers that were intended for the use of a single nontechnical user.



That company is Apple. It was originally founded by Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak and was managed by them until Steve Jobs was forced out of Apple due to management conflicts in 1985. Steve Jobs returned to Apple and stepped in as CEO in 1997. Apple first introduced the iPod which prompted them to start focusing more on creating software for personal digital devices, later leading to the introduction of the first iPhone in 2007. Until today, Apple has manufactured 11 different generations of iPhone as it became one of the most widely used smartphones to date. The iPhone made Apple become one of the most valued companies world wide.

What do you think? Do you use an Apple device? Let me know in the comments below.

Today we'll talk about one of the most widely known tech companies to date.

سنحدث اليوم عن واحدة من أشهر شركات التكنولوجيا حتى الآن

Early on after it's conception, it produced one of the 3 computers credited with creating the home computer market.

في وقت مبكر بعد بدايتها، أنتجت أحد أجهزة الكمبيوتر الثلاثة التي يُنسب إليها إنشاء سوق أجهزة الكمبيوتر المنزلية

Until that point, computers were not accessible to the average consumer.

حتى تلك اللحظة، لم تكن الأجهزة الحاسوبية في متناول المستهلك العادي

1977 was the first time they were marketed to consumers as affordable and



accessible computers that were intended for the use of a single nontechnical user.

كانت 1977 هي المرة الأولى التي يتم فيها تسويقها للمستهلكين كجهاز كمبيوتر ميسور التكلفة وفي المتناول وكانت مخصصة للمستخدم الغير تقني

That company is Apple. It was originally founded by Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak and was managed by them until Steve Jobs was forced out of Apple due to management conflicts in 1985.

تلك الشركة هي شركة آبل. تأسست في الأصل من قبل ستيف جوبز وستيف ووزنياك وتم إدارتها من قبلهم حتى أجبر ستيف جوبز على الخروج من آبل بسبب نزاعات إدارية في عام 1985

Steve Jobs returned to Apple and stepped in as CEO in 1997.

عاد ستيف جوبز إلى شركة آبل وأخذ منصب الرئيس التنفيذي في عام 1997

Apple first introduced the iPod which prompted them to start focusing more on creating software for personal digital devices, later leading to the introduction of the first iPhone in 2007.

قدمت آبل لأول مرة جهاز iPod الذي دفعها إلى البدء في التركيز بشكل أكبر على إنشاء برامج للأجهزة الرقمية الشخصية، مما أدى لاحقاً إلى تقديم أول جهاز iPhone في عام 2007.

Until today, Apple has manufactured 11 different generations of iPhone as it became one of the most widely used smartphones to date.

حتى اليوم ، قامت آبل بتصنيع 11 جيلاً مختلفاً من iPhone وأصبحت واحدة من أكثر الهواتف الذكية استخداماً على نطاق واسع حتى الآن.

The iPhone made Apple become one of the most valued companies worldwide.

جعل iPhone شركة آبل من أعلى الشركات قيمةً في جميع أنحاء العالم.

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Do you use an Apple device?

هل تستخدم جهاز آبل؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي رأيكم في التعليقات بالأسفل.



### Extraordinary

استثنائي

He's well known for his extraordinary talents.

إنه معروف بمواهبه الاستثنائية.

### Lunar Calendar

تقويم قمري

Lunar calendar systems are dependent on the observation of the moon.

تعتمد أنظمة التقويم القمري على مراقبة القمر.

### Tentative

تجريبي / غير مؤكد / أولي

We can make tentative plans for now, and I'll follow up with you on them.

يمكننا وضع خطط أولية في الوقت الحالي، وسأتابعها معك.

### Migratory Movement

حركة الهجرة

Many bird species are dependent on migratory movement rather than settlement.

تعتمد العديد من أنواع الطيور على حركة الهجرة بدلاً من الاستقرار/الاستيطان.



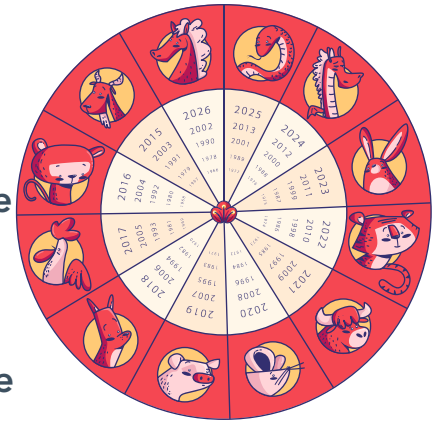
## Gregorian Calendar

التقويم الميلادي

The Gregorian Calendar is more widely used than the Lunar Calendar.

التقويم الميلادي يستخدم على نطاق أكبر من التقويم القمري.

One of the extraordinary Chinese customs that can surprise you is the Chinese New Year celebration. While you might be thinking -everyone celebrates the new year, what's so different about China when it comes to that? Well, unlike most countries, the Chinese celebrate the new year according to their own Lunar Calendar. Due to that, there's really no specific date for the celebration. Much like the Islamic Calendar, tentative lunar observations are made to determine the time for certain events, in this case, the Chinese New Year.



Did you know that the Chinese New Year produces the largest migratory movement in the world per year? The Chinese travel to their hometowns to reunite with their families and thus spend this traditional festival together.

On top of the celebration of Chinese Lunar New year, before the introduction of the Gregorian Calendar to China in 1911, Chinese people used to celebrate only Lunar Calendar birthdays. Nowadays, it is more common to observe the Gregorian calendar birthdays in China. However, the elderly and people who are born in the countryside are still used to celebrating Lunar Calendar birthdays.

What do you think? Did you know about the Chinese Lunar Calendar and New Year celebration? Let me know in the comments below.



One of the extraordinary Chinese customs that can surprise you is the Chinese New Year celebration.

واحدة من العادات الصينية الاستثنائية التي يمكن أن تفاجئك هي احتفال العام الصيني الجديد

While you might be thinking -everyone celebrates the new year, what's so different about China when it comes to that?

بينما قد تفكر أن الجميع يحتفلون بالعام الجديد ، ما هو الاختلاف في الصين عندما يتعلق الأمر بذلك؟

Well, unlike most countries, the Chinese celebrate the new year according to their own Lunar Calendar.

حسناً، على عكس معظم البلدان، يحتفل الصينيون بالعام الجديد وفقاً لتقويم قمري خاص بهم

Due to that, there's really no specific date for the celebration.

ونتيجة لذلك، لا يوجد تاريخ محدد للاحتفال

Much like the Islamic Calendar, tentative lunar observations are made to determine the time for certain events, in this case, the Chinese New Year.

مثل التقويم الإسلامي، يتم إجراء مراقبات مبدئية على القمر لتحديد الوقت المناسب للأحداث معينة، في هذه الحالة، السنة الصينية الجديدة

Did you know that the Chinese New Year produces the largest migratory movement in the world per year?

هل تعلم أن السنة الصينية الجديدة تنتج أكبر حركة هجرة في العالم سنوياً؟

The Chinese travel to their hometowns to reunite with their families and thus spend this traditional festival together.

يسافر الصينيون إلى بلداتهم لجمع شملهم مع أسرهم وبالتالي يقضون هذا المهرجان التقليدي معاً

On top of the celebration of Chinese Lunar New year, before the introduction of the Gregorian Calendar to China in 1911, Chinese people used to celebrate only Lunar Calendar birthdays.

بالإضافة للاحتفال بالسنة القمرية الصينية الجديدة، قبل دخول التقويم الميلادي إلى الصين في عام 1911، اعتاد الصينيون الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد بالتقويم القمري فقط





Nowadays, it is more common to observe the Gregorian calendar birthdays in China.

في الوقت الحاضر، من الشائع ملاحظة أعياد ميلاد التقويم الميلادي في الصين

However, the elderly and people who are born in the countryside are still used to celebrating Lunar Calendar birthdays.

بالرغم من ذلك، لا يزال كبار السن والأشخاص المولودون في الريف معتادون على الاحتفال بأعياد ميلاد التقويم القمري

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you know about the Chinese Lunar Calendar and New Year celebration?

هل كنت تعلم عن التقويم القمري الصيني والاحتفال بالعام الجديد؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل



## Saliva

لعاب

Snake's venom is modified **saliva** delivered through the fangs.

سم الثعبان هو لعاب معدّل يتم نقله عن طريق الأنياب.

## Rib

ضلع

Slow cooked **ribs** have extremely tender meat.

الأضلاع المطبوخة ببطء تحتوي على لحم طري للغاية.

## Lobster

سرطان البحر

**Lobsters** can grow up to four feet long.

يمكن أن ينمو سرطان البحر حتى أربعة أقدام.

## Arachnids

العنكبوتيات / الحيوانات العنكبوتية

**Arachnids** have eight legs.

لدي الحيوانات العنكبوتية ثمانية أرجل.



## Equate

يساوي / يعادل

The taste of fresh juice doesn't **equate** with the taste of artificial flavored juice.

مذاق العصير الطازج لا يساوي مذاق العصير ذو النكهة الاصطناعية.

## Amplification

تضخيم

Even without **amplification**, her voice reaches to the farthest corners.

حتى بدون تضخيم، يصل صوتها إلى أبعد الزوايا.

## Stimulated Emission

الانبعاث المستحث/محفز

Lasers use **stimulated emission** to produce light.

يستخدم الليزر انبعاثاً محفزاً لإنتاج الضوء.



Did you know that 11% of people are left-handed?

Did you know that unless food is mixed with **saliva** you can't taste it?

Did you know that 8% of people have an extra **rib**?

Did you know that 85% of plant life is found in the ocean?

Did you know that **lobsters'** blood is colorless but when exposed to oxygen it turns blue?

Did you know that dreamt is the only word that ends in "mt"?

Did you know that spiders are **arachnids** and not insects?

Did you know that the sentence "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" uses every letter in the English alphabet?

Did you know that all the blinking in one day **equates** to having your eyes closed for 30 minutes?

Did you know that lightning strikes the Earth 100 times every second? That's about 8 million times per day.

Did you know that the word laser stands for "Light Amplification by **Stimulated Emission** of Radiation"?

Did you know that french fries are originally from Belgium?

Did you know that the number 13 is considered unlucky in some regions around the world?

What do you think? Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode? Let me know in the comments below.





Did you know that 11% of people are left-handed?

هل تعلم أن 11% من الناس عُسر؟

Did you know that unless food is mixed with **saliva** you can't taste it?

هل تعلم أنه ما لم يختلط الطعام باللعاب، فلا يمكنك تذوقه؟

Did you know that 8% of people have an extra **rib**?

هل تعلم أن 8% من الناس لديهم ضلع إضافي؟

Did you know that 85% of plant life is found in the ocean?

هل تعلم أن 85% من الحياة النباتية موجودة في المحيط؟

Did you know that **lobsters'** blood is colorless but when exposed to oxygen it turns blue?

هل تعلم أن دم سرطان البحر عديم اللون ولكن عندما يتعرض للأكسجين يتحول إلى اللون الأزرق؟

Did you know that dreamt is the only word that ends in "mt"?

هل تعلم أن "Dreamt" هي الكلمة الوحيدة التي تنتهي بـ "mt"؟

Did you know that spiders are **arachnids** and not insects?

هل تعلم أن العناكب هي حيوانات عنكبوتية وليست حشرات؟

Did you know that the sentence "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" uses every letter in the English alphabet?

هل تعلم أن جملة "the quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" تستخدم كل حرف في الأبجدية الإنجليزية؟

Did you know that all the blinking in one day **equates** to having your eyes closed for 30 minutes?

هل تعلم أن كل الرمش في يوم واحد يعادل إغلاق عينيك لمدة 30 دقيقة؟

Did you know that lightning strikes the Earth 100 times every second? That's about 8 million times per day.

هل تعلم أن البرق يضرب الأرض 100 مرة كل ثانية؟ هذا يعادل حوالي 8 مليون مرة في اليوم



Did you know that the word laser stands for “Light **Amplification** by **Stimulated Emission** of Radiation”?

هل تعلم أن كلمة ليزر تعني “تضخيم الضوء عن طريق انبعاث الإشعاع المحفز”؟

Did you know that french fries are originally from Belgium?

هل تعلم أن البطاطس المقلية أصلها من بلجيكا؟

Did you know that the number 13 is considered unlucky in some regions around the world?

هل تعلم أن الرقم 13 يعتبر مشؤوم في بعض المناطق حول العالم؟

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you say “iKnow” throughout today’s episode?

هل قلت iKnow أثناء حلقة اليوم؟



## Radical

متطرف / جذري

It became easier to be exposed to **radical** beliefs ever since social media became popular.

أصبح من السهل التعرض للمعتقدات المتطرفة منذ أن أصبحت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي شائعة

## Prestigious

مرموق (ذو مقام عالي)

Their house is located in one of the most **prestigious** neighborhoods in the country.

يقع منزلهم في واحدة من أرقى الأحياء السكنية في البلدة

## Ambiguous

غامض / مبهم

Sometimes, people get praised simply for saying **ambiguous** statements.

في بعض الأحيان، يتم الإشادة بالناس فقط لقولهم عبارات غامضة

## Heighten

يزداد

Her sense of fear **heightened** as soon as she heard the noise.

ازداد شعورها بالخوف بمجرد سماع الضجيج



## Triumph

انتصار / نجاح

In classic cinematic fashion, good eventually **triumphed** over evil.

بطريقة سينمائية كلاسيكية، انتصر الخير في النهاية على الشر

She was born on the 31st of October 1950 in Baghdad, Iraq and was most well-known for her **radical** designs. In 2004 she became the first woman to be awarded the Pritzker Architecture Prize, the field's most **prestigious** award, to be the first female ever to achieve such an honor.

That is Zaha Hadid. Zaha began her studies at the American University in Beirut, Lebanon, receiving a bachelor's degree in Mathematics.



Zaha's designs were criticized for being **ambiguous**. She got labeled as a "Paper Architect". This impression of her **heightened** when some of her designs were exhibited as works of art in major museums. Zaha's first built project was the "Vitra Fire Station" (1989-1993) in Germany.

Zaha followed up with multiple projects during that period (1989-1999) including the Millennium Dome in Greenwich, London

In 2012, she became Dame Zaha Hadid, after getting appointed as Dame Commander of the Order of the British Empire (DME) which is considered the "Most Excellent Order of the British Empire". Her last triumph, before she leaves this world at the age of 65 after a heart attack. Zaha Hadid has carved





her name deep in history with her outstanding architecture and extraordinary accomplishments. People may not know all the hardships she faced to get her name where it stands now, but they, certainly, know that she is a figure worthy of utmost respect.

She was born on the 31st of October 1950 in Baghdad, Iraq and was most well-known for her **radical** designs.

ولدت في 31 أكتوبر 1950 في بغداد بالعراق وكانت مشهورة بتصميماتها المتمردة

In 2004 she became the first woman to be awarded the Pritzker Architecture Prize, the field's most **prestigious** award, to be the first female ever to achieve such an honor.

في عام 2004 أصبحت أول امرأة تحصل على جائزة بريتزكر للهندسة المعمارية، وهي أكثر جائزة مرموقة في ذلك المجال، لتكون أول امرأة تحقق مثل هذا الشرف

That is Zaha Hadid.

هذه هي زها حديد

Zaha began her studies at the American University in Beirut, Lebanon, receiving a bachelor's degree in Mathematics.

بدأت زها دراستها في الجامعة الأمريكية في بيروت بلبنان، وحصلت على درجة البكالوريوس في الرياضيات

Zaha's designs were criticized for being **ambiguous**.

تم انتقاد تصاميم زها لكونها غامضة

She got labeled as a "Paper Architect".

تم تصنيفها على أنها "مهندسة على الورق"

This impression of her **heightened** when some of her designs were exhibited as works of art in major museums.

ازداد هذا الانطباع عنها عندما عرضت بعض تصميماتها على أنها أعمال فنية في متاحف كبرى.

Zaha's first built project was the "Vitra Fire Station" (1989-1993) in Germany.

كان أول مشروع بني لها هو "محطة إطفاء فيترا" (1993-1989) في ألمانيا



Zaha followed up with multiple projects during that period (1989-1999) including the Millennium Dome in Greenwich, London.

تابعت زها بمشاريع متعددة خلال تلك الفترة (1989-1999) بما في ذلك قبة الألفية في غرينتش لندن

In 2012, she became Dame Zaha Hadid, after getting appointed as Dame Commander of the Order of the British Empire (DME) which is considered the "Most Excellent Order of the British Empire".

في عام 2012، أصبحت السيدة زها حديد، بعد أن تم تعيينها كقائدة لأمر الإمبراطورية البريطانية الذي يعتبر "أفضل وسام بالإمبراطورية البريطانية"

Her last triumph, before she leaves this world at the age of 65 after a heart attack.

آخر انتصار لها، قبل أن تغادر هذا العالم في سن 65 بعد نوبة قلبية

Zaha Hadid has carved her name deep in history with her outstanding architecture and extraordinary accomplishments.

زها حديد نحتت اسمها عميقاً في التاريخ بهندستها المعمارية الرائعة وإنجازاتها غير العادية

People may not know all the hardships she faced to get her name where it stands now, but they, certainly, know that she is a figure worthy of utmost respect.

قد لا يعرف الناس كل المصاعب التي واجهتها لوضع اسمها بهذه المكانة، لكنهم بالتأكيد يعرفون أنها شخصية تستحق أقصى درجات الاحترام



## Persuasion

الإقناع

If you wish to run for president, **persuasion** should be a key component of your campaign.

إذا كنت ترغب في الترشح للرئاسة ، يجب أن يكون الإقناع مكونًا رئيسيًا في حملتك.

## Endeavor

مسعى

He sacrificed a lot for a risky **endeavor**.

لقد ضحى بالكثير من أجل محاولة محفوفة بالمخاطر

## Knack

براعة / مقدرة خاصة

Successful people usually have a **knack** for convincing others.

عادة ما يكون لدى الأشخاص الناجحون موهبة لإقناع الآخرين

## Diabolical

شيطاني

**Diabolical** results are not always results of intentional planning.

النتائج الشيطانية ليست دائمًا نتاج تخطيط متعمد



## Coercion

إكراه / إجبار

There's no coercion in religion.

لا إكراه في الدين

## Eloquent speech

بلاغة الحديث

Eloquent speech can turn the most difficult of situations in your favor.

يمكن أن يحول الكلام البليغ أصعب المواقف لصالحك

**Persuasion** runs through many human **endeavors**. Salespeople persuade people to buy products or services. Politicians persuade people to support and vote for them. In fact, it's pretty hard for us to get anything done at all without some form of **persuasion**.

Anyone can practice the art of **persuasion**. Some people seem to have a **knack** for convincing others to see things their way. However, much like a language, anyone can be fluent at it with the right amount of dedication.

You may wonder why you should bother to learn how to persuade others. You might even consider such an "art" to be **diabolical** or manipulative. But there's one thing to note, there's a fine line between **Persuasion** and Manipulation; Manipulation is coercion through force to get someone to do something that is not in their own interest. **Persuasion** is the art of getting people to do things that are in their own best interest that also benefit you. And the truth is that everyone





has, at one point or another, been in a position where they had to persuade someone of something. For instance, most people have to persuade an employer to hire them before they can even begin to work and earn money.

As the prophet Mohammed {PBUH} said: "In some eloquent speech there is magic".

Which means; A person who knows how to speak eloquently can get people to see the world through their own glasses.

**Persuasion** runs through many human **endeavors**. Salespeople persuade people to buy products or services.

الإقناع يتخلل الكثير من المساعي الإنسانية. مندوبو المبيعات يقنعون الناس بشراء المنتجات أو الخدمات.

Politicians persuade people to support and vote for them.

السياسيون يقنعون الناس بدعمهم والتصويت لهم

In fact, it's pretty hard for us to get anything done at all without some form of **persuasion**.

في الواقع، من الصعب جدًا علينا القيام بأي شيء على الإطلاق دون أي شكل من أشكال الإقناع

Anyone can practice the art of **persuasion**.

يمكن لأي شخص ممارسة فن الإقناع

Some people seem to have a **knack** for convincing others to see things their way.

بعض الناس يبدو أن لديهم موهبة إقناع الآخرين برؤية الأشياء من وجهة نظرهم

However, much like a language, anyone can be fluent at it with the right amount of dedication.

ومع ذلك، مثل أي لغة، يمكن لأي شخص أن يجيدها بالكمية المناسبة من التفاني

You may wonder why you should bother to learn how to persuade others.



قد تتساءل لماذا عليك أن تكلف نفسك عناء تعلم كيفية إقناع الآخرين

You might even consider such an «art» to be **diabolical** or manipulative.

بل قد تعتبر هذا «الفن» شيطانيًا أو متلاعبًا

But there's one thing to note, there's a fine line between **Persuasion** and Manipulation;

ولكن هناك شيء واحد يجب ملاحظته ، هناك خط رفيع بين الإقناع والتلاعب؛

Manipulation is coercion through force to get someone to do something that is not in their own interest.

التلاعب هو الإكراه من خلال القهر لجعل شخص ما يفعل شيئاً لا يخدم مصلحته

**Persuasion** is the art of getting people to do things that are in their own best interest that also benefit you.

الإقناع هو فن جعل الناس يفعلون أشياء في مصلحتهم الخاصة والتي تفيدك أيضاً

And the truth is that everyone has, at one point or another, been in a position where they had to persuade someone of something.

والحقيقة هي أن الجميع، في مرحلة أو أخرى، كانوا في وضع كان عليهم فيه إقناع شخص ما بشيء ما

For instance, most people have to persuade an employer to hire them before they can even begin to work and earn money.

على سبيل المثال، يجب على معظم الناس إقناع صاحب العمل بتوظيفهم قبل أن يتمكنوا حتى من بدء العمل وكسب المال

As the prophet Mohammed {PBUH} said: "In some eloquent speech there is magic".

كما قال رسول الله محمد صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ: «إن من البيان لسحرا»

Which means; A person who knows how to speak eloquently can get people to see the world through their own glasses.

أي أنه يمكن للشخص الذي يعرف كيف يتحدث بطلاقة أن يجعل الناس يرون العالم من خلال نظرتهم الخاصة



## Khedive

الخدوي

"Khedive" is the title of the ruler of Egypt under the Ottoman umbrella.

«الخدوي» هو لقب حاكم مصر تحت مظلة الحكم العثماني

## Veiled

محجب / خفي

The report makes **veiled** references to his criminal activities.

يشير التقرير بشكل مستتر إلى أنشطته الإجرامية

## Peasant

فلاح / ريفي

Under Muhammad Ali Pasha's rule, **peasants** did not have the right to own their land.

تحت حكم محمد علي باشا، لم يكن للفلاحين حق ملكية أراضيهم

## Lantern

فانوس

In the past, people used **lanterns** in the dark.

في الماضي كان الناس يستخدمون الفوانيس في الظلام



## Hammered copper

نحاس مطروق

Hammered copper can be used to make sculptures.

يمكن استخدام النحاس المطروق لصنع التماثيل

## Commemorate

إحياء ذكرى

The 6<sup>th</sup> of October is commemorated each year with a national holiday.

يتم الاحتفال بـ 6 أكتوبر كل عام بعطلة وطنية

## Abolition

إلغاء / إبطال شيء

The abolition of slavery is a noble cause.

إن إلغاء العبودية قضية نبيلة

## Emblem

شعار / رمز

The flag is the emblem of our nation.

العلم هو شعار أمتنا





In the late 1860s, the French sculptor Frédéric Bartholdi approached Isma'il Pasha, **Khedive** of Egypt and proposed a project named "Egypt Carrying the Light to Asia", also known as "Progress Carrying the Light to Asia" at the entrance to the Suez Canal featuring a **veiled** Egyptian **peasant** woman holding a **lantern**. The project was declined due to the expensive cost and the statue was never constructed.

The Port Said Lighthouse was built instead, by François Coignet in 1869.

Around 1865, as the American Civil War came to an end, the French historian Edouard de Laboulaye proposed that France create a statue to give to the United States.

Bartholdi was inspired by Laboulaye's comment and later on created the statue itself out of sheets of **hammered copper**, while Alexandre-Gustave Eiffel, the man behind the famed Eiffel Tower, designed the statue's steel framework, unveiling the statue in 1886.

The statue was originally intended to **commemorate** the **abolition** of slavery, and later became a symbol of celebration for immigrants.

Today, the monument draws 4.5 million visitors a year and is the most widely known American **emblem** worldwide.

What do you think? Did you know about the history of the Statue of Liberty? Let me know in the comments below..



In the late 1860s, the French sculptor Frédéric Bartholdi approached Isma'il Pasha, **Khedive** of Egypt

في أواخر ستينيات القرن التاسع عشر، تقرب النحات الفرنسي فريدريك بارتولدي إلى إسماعيل باشا خديوي مصر

and proposed a project named "Egypt Carrying the Light to Asia", also known as "Progress Carrying the Light to Asia" at the entrance to the Suez Canal featuring a **veiled** Egyptian **peasant** woman holding a **lantern**.

واقترح مشروعاً بعنوان «مصر تحمل الضوء إلى آسيا» ، والمعروف أيضاً باسم «التقدم يحمل الضوء إلى آسيا» عند مدخل قناة السويس يعرض امرأة فلاحه مصرية محجبة تحمل فانوس

The project was declined due to the expensive cost and the statue was never constructed.

تم رفض المشروع بسبب التكلفة الباهظة ولم يتم بناء التمثال

The Port Said Lighthouse was built instead, by François Coignet in 1869.

تم بناء منارة بورسعيد بدلاً من ذلك، بواسطة فرانسوا كوانيه في عام 1869

Around 1865, as the American Civil War came to an end, the French historian Edouard de Laboulaye proposed that France create a statue to give to the United States.

حوالي عام 1865، مع انتهاء الحرب الأهلية الأمريكية، اقترح المؤرخ الفرنسي إدوارد دو لابولاي أن تنشئ فرنسا تمثالاً لتقدمه إلى الولايات المتحدة

Bartholdi was inspired by Laboulaye's comment and later on created the statue itself out of sheets of **hammered copper**

ألهم بارتولدي بتعليق لابولاي وبعد ذلك أنشأ التمثال نفسه من صفائح نحاس مطروق

While Alexandre-Gustave Eiffel, the man behind the famed Eiffel Tower, designed the statue's steel framework, unveiling the statue in 1886.

بينما صمم ألكسندر جوستاف إيفل، الرجل خلف برج إيفل الشهير الهيكل الفولاذي للتمثال وكُشف التمثال عام 1886



The statue was originally intended to **commemorate** the **abolition** of slavery, and later became a symbol of celebration for immigrants.

كان القصد من التمثال في الأصل إحياء ذكرى إلغاء العبودية، وأصبح لاحقاً رمزاً احتفال للمهاجرين

Today, the monument draws 4.5 million visitors a year and is the most widely known American **emblem** worldwide.

اليوم يجذب النصب 4.5 مليون زائر سنوياً وهو الشعار الأمريكي الأكثر شهرة على مستوى العالم

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you know about the history of the Statue of Liberty?

هل كنت تعلم عن تاريخ تمثال الحرية؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل



## Curdle

يتخثر

Cheese is made by **curdling** milk.

تصنع الجبنة عن طريق تخثر اللبن.

## Consecutive

على التوالي / متعاقب

The boxer couldn't bear the **consecutive** hits he received.

لم يتمكن الملاكم من تحمل الضربات المتتالية التي تلقاها.

## Approximately

تقريبا

The recipe requires **approximately** 2 spoons of brown sugar.

تتطلب الوصفة حوالي ملعقتين من السكر البني.

Did you know that all insects have 6 legs?

Did you know that a giraffe can clean its ears with its 50 cm tongue?

Did you know that fire usually moves faster uphill than downhill?

Did you know that camel's milk doesn't **curdle**?



Did you know that elephants are the only mammal that can't jump?

Did you know that a duck can't walk without bobbing its head?

Did you know that an average person will spend about 25 years asleep?

Did you know that 'Bookkeeper' and 'bookkeeping' are the only 2 words in the English language with three **consecutive** double letters?

Did you know that the word 'Strengths' is the longest word in the English language with just one vowel?

Did you know that a group of rhinos are called a crash?

Did you know that a group of owls are called a parliament?

Did you know that white cats with blue eyes are usually deaf?

Did you know that The Great Wall of China is **approximately** 6,430 Km long?

What do you think? Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode? Let me know in the comments below.



Did you know that all insects have 6 legs?

هل تعلم أن جميع الحشرات لها 6 أرجل؟

Did you know that a giraffe can clean its ears with its 50 cm tongue?

هل تعلم أن الزرافة يمكنها تنظيف أذنيها بلسانها البالغ 50 سم؟

Did you know that fire usually moves faster uphill than downhill?

هل تعلم أن النار عادةً ما تتحرك صعوداً أسرع منها نزولاً؟

Did you know that camel's milk doesn't curdle?

هل تعلم أن حليب الإبل لا يتخثر؟

Did you know that elephants are the only mammal that can't jump?

هل تعلم أن الفيلة هي الثدييات الوحيدة التي لا يمكنها القفز؟

Did you know that a duck can't walk without bobbing its head?

هل تعلم أن البط لا تستطيع المشي دون تمايل رأسها؟

Did you know that an average person will spend about 25 years asleep?

هل تعلم أن الشخص العادي يقضي حوالي 25 عاماً نائماً؟

Did you know that 'Bookkeeper' and 'bookkeeping' are the only 2 words in the English language with three consecutive double letters?

هل تعلم أن "Bookkeeper" و "Bookkeeper" هما الكلمتان الوحيدتان في اللغة الإنجليزية بثلاث أحرف مزدوجة متتالية؟

Did you know that the word 'Strengths' is the longest word in the English language with just one vowel?

هل تعلم أن كلمة "Strengths" هي أطول كلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية بحرف متحرك واحد فقط؟

Did you know that a group of rhinos are called a crash?

هل تعلم أن مجموعة من حيوانات وحيد القرن تسمى crash؟

Did you know that a group of owls are called a parliament?

هل تعلم أن مجموعة من البوم تسمى parliament "برلمان"؟



Did you know that white cats with blue eyes are usually deaf?

هل تعلم أن القطط البيضاء ذات العيون الزرقاء عادة ما تكون صماء؟

Did you know that The Great Wall of China is **approximately** 6,430 Km long?

هل تعلم أن سور الصين العظيم يبلغ طوله حوالي 6,430 كم؟

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode?

هل قلت iKnow أثناء حلقة اليوم؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل



## Curdle

يتخثر

Cheese is made by **curdling** milk.

تصنع الجبنة عن طريق تخثر اللبن.

## Consecutive

على التوالي / متعاقب

The boxer couldn't bear the **consecutive** hits he received.

لم يتمكن الملاكم من تحمل الضربات المتتالية التي تلقاها.

## Approximately

تقريبا

The recipe requires **approximately** 2 spoons of brown sugar.

تتطلب الوصفة حوالي ملعقتين من السكر البني.

Did you know that all insects have 6 legs?

Did you know that a giraffe can clean its ears with its 50 cm tongue?

Did you know that fire usually moves faster uphill than downhill?

Did you know that camel's milk doesn't **curdle**?





Did you know that elephants are the only mammal that can't jump?

Did you know that a duck can't walk without bobbing its head?

Did you know that an average person will spend about 25 years asleep?

Did you know that 'Bookkeeper' and 'bookkeeping' are the only 2 words in the English language with three **consecutive** double letters?

Did you know that the word 'Strengths' is the longest word in the English language with just one vowel?

Did you know that a group of rhinos are called a crash?

Did you know that a group of owls are called a parliament?

Did you know that white cats with blue eyes are usually deaf?

Did you know that The Great Wall of China is **approximately** 6,430 Km long?

What do you think? Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode? Let me know in the comments below.



Did you know that all insects have 6 legs?

هل تعلم أن جميع الحشرات لها 6 أرجل؟

Did you know that a giraffe can clean its ears with its 50 cm tongue?

هل تعلم أن الزرافة يمكنها تنظيف أذنيها بلسانها البالغ 50 سم؟

Did you know that fire usually moves faster uphill than downhill?

هل تعلم أن النار عادةً ما تتحرك صعوداً أسرع منها نزولاً؟

Did you know that camel's milk doesn't **curdle**?

هل تعلم أن حليب الإبل لا يتخثر؟

Did you know that elephants are the only mammal that can't jump?

هل تعلم أن الفيلة هي الثدييات الوحيدة التي لا يمكنها القفز؟

Did you know that a duck can't walk without bobbing its head?

هل تعلم أن البط لا تستطيع المشي دون تمايل رأسها؟

Did you know that an average person will spend about 25 years asleep?

هل تعلم أن الشخص العادي يقضي حوالي 25 عاماً نائماً؟

Did you know that 'Bookkeeper' and 'bookkeeping' are the only 2 words in the English language with three **consecutive** double letters?

هل تعلم أن "Bookkeeper" و "Bookkeeping" هما الكلمتان الوحيدتان في اللغة الإنجليزية بثلاث أحرف مزدوجة متتالية؟

Did you know that the word 'Strengths' is the longest word in the English language with just one vowel?

هل تعلم أن كلمة "Strengths" هي أطول كلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية بحرف متحرك واحد فقط؟

Did you know that a group of rhinos are called a crash?

هل تعلم أن مجموعة من حيوانات وحيد القرن تسمى crash؟

Did you know that a group of owls are called a parliament?

هل تعلم أن مجموعة من البوم تسمى parliament "برلمان"؟



Did you know that white cats with blue eyes are usually deaf?

هل تعلم أن القطط البيضاء ذات العيون الزرقاء عادة ما تكون صماء؟

Did you know that The Great Wall of China is **approximately** 6,430 Km long?

هل تعلم أن سور الصين العظيم يبلغ طوله حوالي 6,430 كم؟

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode?

هل قلت iKnow أثناء حلقة اليوم؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل



## Hypothetical

افتراضياً

The study was based on a **hypothetical** idea.

استندت الدراسة على فكرة افتراضية.

## Vial

قارورة

He filled the vial with a chemical substance.

ملأ القارورة بمادة كيميائية.

## Radioactive

مشع / إشعاعي

Some of the elements used in the lab are **radioactive**.

بعض العناصر المستخدمة في المختبر مشعة.

## Decay

يتحلل / يتدهور

Organic materials **decay** rapidly, especially in hot climates like Egypt's.

تتحلل المواد العضوية بسرعة، خاصة في المناخات الحارة مثل مناخ مصر.



## Relay mechanism

آلية تتابع

He used a **relay mechanism** for his alarm clock.

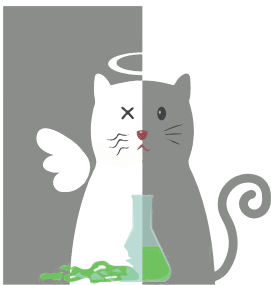
استخدم آلية متتابعة للساعة المنبهة الخاصة به.

## Organism

كائن حي

Life on earth is composed of various living **organisms**.

تضم الحياة على الأرض كائنات حية مختلفة.



Erwin Schrödinger was born in 1887 in Vienna, and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1933. He is most known for his work in quantum theory, particularly about his thought experiment involving a cat.

Schrödinger's cat is a **hypothetical** experiment in which a living cat is placed into a steel chamber along with a hammer, a **vial** of acid and a very small amount of **radioactive** substance. If even a single atom of the **radioactive** substance **decays** during the test period, a **relay mechanism** will trip the hammer, which will in turn, break the poisonous gas **vial** and cause the cat to die.



One study claims that until the chamber is observed, the cat is both dead and alive at the same time.

Of course, Schrödinger claimed, that was ridiculous. Because it is impossible for an **organism** to be simultaneously alive and dead at the same time. While many people incorrectly assume Schrödinger supported the premise behind the thought experiment, he really didn't. His entire point was that it was impossible.

While it is true that modern experiments have revealed that even though that doesn't work with large living **organisms** like cats, it does work for tiny things like electrons, meaning that they can exist in two states at the same time.

What do you think? Have you heard of Schrodinger's cat before? Let me know in the comments below.

Erwin Schrödinger was born in 1887 in Vienna, and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1933.

ولد إروين شروندجر عام 1887 في فيينا وحصل على جائزة نوبل في الفيزياء عام 1933.

He is most known for his work in quantum theory, particularly about his thought experiment involving a cat.

وهو معروف بعمله في نظرية الكم، خاصة حول تجربته الفكرية التي ترتبط بقطة.

Schrödinger's cat is a famous **hypothetical** experiment in which a living cat is placed into a steel chamber along with a hammer, a **vial** of acid and a very small amount of **radioactive** substance.

قطة شروندجر هي تجربة افتراضية شهيرة يتم فيها وضع قطة حية في غرفة فولاذية جنباً إلى جنب مع مطرقة وقارورة من الحمض وكمية صغيرة جداً من مادة مشعة.



If even a single atom of the **radioactive** substance **decays** during the test period, a **relay mechanism** will trip the hammer, which will in turn, break the poisonous gas vial and cause the cat to die.

إذا تحللت ذرة واحدة من المادة المشعة خلال فترة الاختبار، فستقوم آلية التتابع بإسقاط المطرقة، والتي بدورها ستكسر قارورة الغاز السامة وتتسبب في موت القطعة.

One study claims that until the inside of the chamber is observed, the cat is both dead and alive at the same time.

تدعي إحدى الدراسات أنه حتى يتم معاينة الغرفة من الداخل، تكون القطعة ميتة وحية في نفس الوقت.

Of course, Schrödinger claimed, that was ridiculous.

بالطبع ادعى شرودنجر أن ذلك كان سخيفاً.

Because it is impossible for an **organism** to be simultaneously alive and dead at the same time.

لأنه من المستحيل للكائن الحي أن يكون على قيد الحياة وميت في نفس الوقت.

While many people incorrectly assume Schrödinger supported the premise behind the thought experiment, he really didn't. His entire point was that it was impossible.

بينما يفترض الكثير من الناس بشكل غير صحيح أن شرودنجر دعم الفرضية الكامنة وراء التجربة الفكرية، إلا أنه لم يفعل ذلك حقاً. كانت وجهة نظره بالكامل أنها مستحيلة.

While it is true that modern experiments have revealed that even though that doesn't work with large living **organisms** like cats, it does work for tiny things like electrons, meaning that they can exist in two states at the same time.

في حين أنه من الصحيح أن التجارب الحديثة كشفت أنه على الرغم من أن هذا لا يعمل مع الكائنات الحية الكبيرة مثل القطط، إلا أنه يعمل مع الأشياء الصغيرة مثل الإلكترونات، مما يعني أنها يمكن أن توجد في حالتين في نفس الوقت.



## Hypothesis

فرضية (تفسير أو تخمين بدون أي دليل يثبتها أو تجارب تدعمها)

- He's good at making **hypotheses**, but when it comes to providing evidence, he's nowhere to be seen.  
إنه جيد في وضع الفرضيات، ولكن عندما يتعلق الأمر بتقديم الأدلة، فإنه من الصعب العثور عليه.
- I told you, Aristarchus' **hypothesis** makes no sense  
أخبرتكم أن فرضية أرسطرخس غير منطقية.

## Theory

نظرية (مبنية على حقائق)

- The **theory** of relativity is supported by many scientists.  
نظرية النسبية مدعومة من قبل العديد من العلماء.
- It's a **theory** that attempts to explain how change works.  
إنها نظرية تحاول شرح كيفية عمل التغيير.

## Premise

فرضية (يتم بناء عليها جدال أو وجهة نظر)

- Stop making arguments based on false **premises**.  
توقف عن تقديم الحجج على أساس مقدمات خاطئة.
- Your major **premise** was based on a faulty assumption.  
استندت فرضيتك الرئيسية على افتراض خاطئ.





## Infrared

الأشعة تحت الحمراء

The human eye cannot see **infrared** light.

عين الإنسان لا يمكنها رؤية الأشعة تحت الحمراء.

## Ultraviolet

الأشعة فوق البنفسجية

A sunblock cream can help prevent damage from **ultraviolet** light exposure.

يمكن أن يساعد كريم واقٍ للشمس في منع الضرر الناتج عن التعرض للأشعة فوق البنفسجية.

Did you know that an ostrich's eye is bigger than its brain?

Did you know that the most commonly used letter in the English alphabet is E?

Did you know that goldfish can see both **infrared** and **ultraviolet** light?

Did you know that cats spend 66% of their life asleep?

Did you know that honey is the only natural food which never spoils?

Did you know that Coca-Cola originally contained cocaine?

Did you know that if you add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 consecutively (1 + 2 + 3...) it totals 5050?

Did you know that an octopus pupil is rectangular?

Did you know that rubber bands last longer when kept refrigerated?

Did you know that the opposite sides of a six-sided die always





adds up to 7?

Did you know that there are more chickens than people?

Did you know that the doorbell was invented in 1831?

Did you know that more people are allergic to cows' milk than any other food?

What do you think?

Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode?

Let me know in the comments below.

Did you know that an ostrich's eye is bigger than its brain?

هل تعلم أن عين النعام أكبر من مخها؟

Did you know that the most commonly used letter in the English alphabet is E?

هل تعلم أن الحرف الأكثر استخدامًا في الأبجدية الإنجليزية هو E؟

Did you know that goldfish can see both **infrared** and **ultraviolet** light?

هل تعلم أن السمك الذهبي يمكنه رؤية كل من الأشعة تحت الحمراء والأشعة فوق البنفسجية؟

Did you know that cats spend 66% of their life asleep?

هل تعلم أن القطط تقضي 66% من حياتها نائمة؟

Did you know that honey is the only natural food which never spoils?

هل تعلم أن العسل هو الغذاء الطبيعي الوحيد الذي لا يفسد؟

Did you know that Coca-Cola originally contained cocaine?

هل تعلم أن الكوكاكولا كانت تحتوي في الأصل على الكوكايين؟

Did you know that if you add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 consecutively (1 + 2 + 3...) it totals 5050?

هل تعلم أنه إذا قمت بجمع كل الأرقام من 1 إلى 100 على التوالي (1 + 2 + 3 ...) يبلغ الإجمالي 5050؟



Did you know that an octopus pupil is rectangular?

هل تعلم أن بؤبؤ عين الأخطبوط مستطيل؟

Did you know that rubber bands last longer when kept refrigerated?

هل تعلم أن الأربطة المطاطية تدوم لفترة أطول عند حفظها في الثلاجة؟

Did you know that the opposite sides of a six-sided die always adds up to 7?

هل تعلم أن الجوانب المقابلة للنرد ذا الجوانب الستة يكون إجماليها دائماً 7؟

Did you know that there are more chickens than people?

هل تعلم أن هناك دجاج أكثر من الناس؟

Did you know that the doorbell was invented in 1831?

هل تعلم أن جرس الباب اخترع عام 1831؟

Did you know that more people are allergic to cows' milk than any other food?

هل تعلم أن المزيد من الناس لديهم حساسية من حليب الأبقار أكثر من أي طعام آخر؟

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode?

هل قلت "iKnow" أثناء حلقة اليوم؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل.



## Polymath

شخص موسوعي (شخص لديه العلم في الكثير من المجالات)

As a polymath, his research includes many fields.

كشخص موسوعي، يتضمن بحثه العديد من المجالات.

## Algorithm

خوارزمية / لوغاريتم

An Algorithm is a set of rules to be followed in calculations or other problem-solving operations.

الخوارزمية هي مجموعة من القواعد التي يجب اتباعها في العمليات الحسابية أو العمليات الأخرى لحل المسائل

## Astronomer

عالم فلك

He spent most of his career as a mathematical astronomer

قضى معظم حياته المهنية كعالم فلك رياضي

## Astrologer

عالم تنجيم / مُنجم

As an Astrologer, he spends most of his time tracking the position of the stars.

بصفته منجماً، يقضي معظم وقته في تتبع موقع النجوم.



## Geographer

عالم جغرافي

He presented many researches as a Geographer.

قدم العديد من الأبحاث كجغرافي.

## Caliphate

خلافة

Under the Caliphate of Harun al-Rashid the legendary library "Baghdad's House of Wisdom" was established.

تحت خلافة هارون الرشيد تأسست المكتبة الأسطورية "بيت الحكمة في بغداد".

## Compendious

مختصر

Students have to study a compendious text about basic mathematics.

يجب على الطلاب دراسة نص موجز عن الرياضيات الأساسية.



He was born in 780 and died 850. He was a Muslim polymath whose major works introduced Arabic Numerals and the concepts of Algebra.

His name inspired the latinized words Algorithm and Algebra. As a polymath, he was a mathematician, astronomer, astrologer and geographer.

He spent his life in Baghdad where he worked as a scholar at the "House of Wisdom" under the caliphate Al-Ma'mun the son of Harun al-Rashid.

That is Muhammad ibn Musa al-Khwarizmi. His greatest mathematical work "Hisab al-Jabr wa-al-Muqabala" "The Compendious Book on Calculation by Completion and Balancing" is regarded as the foundation and cornerstone of Algebra, Algorithms and modern-day computer science. He also wrote important works in Astronomy, Geography and Astrology which were translated into other languages by the 1200s.

Until this very day, people use algorithms to do addition and long division, principles that are found in Al-Khwarizmi's texts, written about 1200 years ago. His many contributions to scientific development and research are still as relevant as ever in the modern-world.

He was born in 780 and died 850.

ولد عام 780 وتوفي 850.

He was a Muslim polymath whose major works introduced Arabic Numerals and the concepts of Algebra.

كان مسلم موسوعي قدمت أعماله الرئيسية الأرقام العربية ومفاهيم الجبر.

His name inspired the latinized words Algorithm and Algebra.

الكلمات اللاتينية "Algorithm (الخوارزمية)" و "Algebra (الجبر)" استوحيت من اسمه.



As a polymath, he was a mathematician, astronomer, astrologer and geographer.

وباعتباره موسوعياً، فقد كان عالماً في الرياضيات وعلم الفلك والتنجيم والجغرافيا.

He spent his life in Baghdad where he worked as a scholar at the "House of Wisdom" under the caliphate Al-Ma'mun the son of Harun al-Rashid.

أمضى حياته في بغداد حيث عمل كباحث في "بيت الحكمة" في عهد الخليفة المأمون ابن هارون الرشيد.

That is Muhammad ibn Musa al-Khwarizmi.

هذا هو محمد بن موسى الخوارزمي.

His greatest mathematical work "Hisab al-Jabr wa-al-Muqabala" "The Compendious Book on Calculation by Completion and Balancing" is regarded as the foundation and cornerstone of Algebra, Algorithms and modern-day computer science.

أعظم أعماله الرياضية "حساب الجبر والمقابلة" "الكتاب المختصر في الحساب عن طريق الإكمال والموازنة" يعتبر حجر الأساس في الجبر والخوارزميات وعلوم الكمبيوتر الحديثة.

He also wrote important works in Astronomy, Geography and Astrology which were translated into other languages by the 1200s.

كما كتب أعمالاً مهمة في علم الفلك والجغرافيا وعلم التنجيم والتي ترجمت إلى لغات أخرى في القرن الثاني عشر.

Until this very day, people use algorithms to do addition and long division, principles that are found in Al-Khwarizmi's texts, written about 1200 years ago.

حتى يومنا هذا، يستخدم الناس الخوارزميات للقيام بعمليات الإضافة والقسمة المطولة، وهي مبادئ موجودة في نصوص الخوارزمي، المكتوبة منذ حوالي 1200 عام.

His many contributions to scientific development and research are still as relevant as ever in the modern-world.

لا تزال مساهماته العديدة في التطوير العلمي والبحث ذات صلة في العالم الحديث كما كانت في أي وقت مضى.



## Thanksgiving

عيد الشكر

The Daijosai, or great **thanksgiving** festival, is the most important succession ritual an emperor performs.

الدايچوساي، أو عيد الشكر العظيم، هو أهم طقوس الخلافة التي يؤديها الإمبراطور.

## Pardoning / Pardon

العفو

He was released from a death sentence by a royal **pardon**.

أُطلق سراحه من حكم بالإعدام من قبل عفو ملكي.

## Warrant

مبرر / يبرر

In many people's eyes, his actions did not **warrant** a reaction that severe.

في أعين كثير من الناس ، لا تبرر أفعاله رد بهذه الشدة.

## Obesity

البدانة

**Obesity** affects not just appearance, but disease risk as well.

لا تؤثر السمنة على المظهر فحسب، بل تؤثر أيضًا على عرضة الخطر للأمراض.





## Symbolic

رمزي

There seems to be a **symbolic** pattern in his art.

يبدو أن هناك نمطاً رمزياً في فنه.

## Reasoning

منطق

He questioned the **reasoning** behind the decision.

شكك في المنطق وراء القرار.

## Ritual

طقوس

The main Islamic religious **ritual** is prayer five times a day.

الطقس الديني الإسلامي الرئيسي هو الصلاة.

## Pints

وحدة وزن (= نص لتر)

He had two **pints** of milk.

تناول لتر من الحليب.



## Imperial

إمبراطوري

Britain's **imperial** era is long gone but the consequenc-es are still present.

لقد انتهى عهد الإمبراطورية البريطانية منذ فترة طويلة , لكن العواقب لا تزال موجودة.

## Atheistic

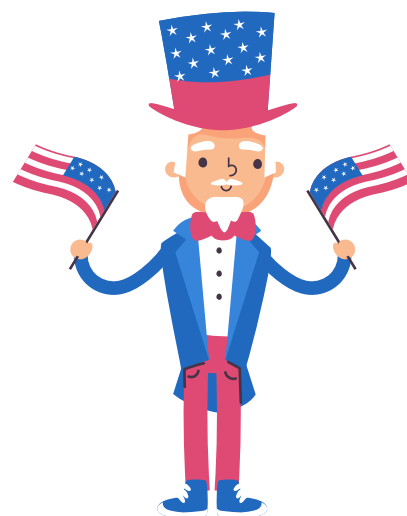
إلحادي / شخص ينكر

Advocating for **atheistic** ideologies is illegal in some countries.

الدعوة إلى الأيديولوجيات الإلحادية غير قانونية في بعض البلدان.

Since the 1940s, US presidents have been presented with a **Thanksgiving** turkey at a special ceremony and, occasionally, have spared the bird's life by officially **pardoning** it. (It's not clear what crime the birds committed in the first place to **warrant** a **pardon**.) In 1989, George Bush Senior made the turkey **pardon** a permanent part of the ceremony, so it's now an annual event. The happy turkeys are returned to a farm to live out the rest of their lives – which, unfortunately, usually last less than a year, as the birds have been so overfed that they develop heart disease and other **obesity**-related illnesses. And if you're wondering whether there's some deeper meaning or **symbolic reasoning** to this **ritual** – there isn't.

Another strange thing that happens in the US is the practice of using feet and inches, pounds and ounces and **pints** and gallons otherwise known as the "**imperial** system". The **imperial** system was passed to the US



غرائب أمريكا



by Britain, and later modified slightly. The rival metric system was considered **atheistic** by some when it first emerged in the nineteenth century. A paper published in Ohio in the 1880s defended the traditional system as "a just weight and a just measure, which alone are acceptable to the Lord." The US remains the only industrialized country in the world not to have adopted it as the official system of measurement.

What do you think? Did you know about these things? Let me know in the comments below.

Since the 1940s, US presidents have been presented with a **Thanksgiving** turkey at a special ceremony and, occasionally, have spared the bird's life by officially **pardoning** it.

منذ أربعينيات القرن الماضي، عُرض على الرؤساء الأمريكيين ديك رومي لعيد الشكر في احتفال خاص، وأحياناً أنقذوا حياة الطائر بالعتفو عنه رسمياً.

(It's not clear what crime the birds committed in the first place to **warrant** a **pardon**.)

(ليس من الواضح ما هي الجريمة التي ارتكبتها الطيور في المقام الأول لتبرير العفو).

In 1989, George Bush Senior made the turkey **pardon** a permanent part of the ceremony, so it's now an annual event.

في عام 1989، جعل جورج بوش الأكبر العفو عن الديك الرومي جزءاً دائماً من الحفل، لذا فهو الآن حدث سنوي.

The happy turkeys are returned to a farm to live out the rest of their lives – which, unfortunately, usually last less than a year, as the birds have been so overfed that they develop heart disease and other **obesity**-related illnesses.

يتم إرجاع الديوك الرومي السعيدة إلى المزرعة ليعيشوا بقية حياتهم - والتي للأسف تستمر عادة أقل من عام، حيث يتم الإفراط في إطعام الطيور لدرجة أنها تصاب بأمراض القلب وغيرها من الأمراض المرتبطة بالسمنة.

And if you're wondering whether there's some deeper meaning or **symbolic reasoning** to this **ritual** – there isn't.

وإذا كنت تتساءل عما إذا كان هناك بعض المعنى الأعماق أو المنطق الرمزي لهذا الطقس - فهذا لا يوجد.



Another strange thing that happens in the US is the practice of using feet and inches, pounds and ounces and **pints** and gallons otherwise known as the "**imperial** system".

شيء غريب آخر يحدث في الولايات المتحدة هو ممارسة استخدام القدم والبوصة والرطل والأونص وأنصاف الليترات (pounds) والجالونات المعروفة باسم "النظام الإمبراطوري".

The **imperial** system was passed to the US by Britain, and later modified slightly.

تم تمرير النظام الإمبراطوري إلى الولايات المتحدة من قبل بريطانيا، ثم تم تعديله قليلاً.

The rival metric system was considered **atheistic** by some when it first emerged in the nineteenth century.

اعتبر البعض النظام المترى المتنافس إلحادياً عندما ظهر لأول مرة في القرن التاسع عشر.

A paper published in Ohio in the 1880s defended the traditional system as "a just weight and a just measure, which alone are acceptable to the Lord."

دافعت ورقة بحثية نُشرت في أوهايو في ثمانينيات القرن التاسع عشر عن النظام التقليدي على أنه "وزن عادل ومقياس عادل، وهو وحده مقبول لدى الرب".

The US remains the only industrialized country in the world not to have adopted it as the official system of measurement.

لا تزال الولايات المتحدة الدولة الصناعية الوحيدة في العالم التي لم تعتمد كنظام قياس رسمي.

What do you think? Did you know about these things? Let me know in the comments below.

ما رأيك؟ هل كنت تعلم عن هذه الأشياء؟ قولوا لي آرائكم في التعليقات بالأسفل.



## Epoch

عصر / عهد / حقبة

The end of an **epoch** in the Egyptian history came with the annulment of monarchy.

جاءت نهاية حقبة في التاريخ المصري مع إلغاء الملكية.

## Stature

قامة / مكانة ذات شأن

His great international **stature** remained unchallenged throughout his career.

ظلت مكانته الدولية العظيمة بلا منازع طوال حياته المهنية.

## Enduring

باقي / مستمر

His remaining texts **endured** for centuries.

استمرت نصوصه المتبقية لقرون.

## Extant

موجود

She ended the final **extant** edition of her book four weeks before her death.

أنهت الطبعة المتبقية من كتابها قبل وفاتها بأربعة أسابيع.



## Byzantium

بيزنطة

**Byzantium** became the capital of the ottoman empire, now known as Istanbul.

أصبحت بيزنطة عاصمة الإمبراطورية العثمانية، المعروفة الآن باسم اسطنبول.

Abu Nasr al-Farabi is widely regarded as the founder of philosophy within the Islamic world. Although he had some noteworthy predecessors, such as al-Kindi and al-Razi, he was the first philosopher of his **epoch** to command the unqualified respect of future generations. Ibn Sina, Ibn Rushd and Musa ben Maimon, all considered many of Alfarabi's themes and left written testimony of their admiration for him. He became known as the "second teacher," that is, second only to Aristotle.

As far as Alfarabi's writings are concerned, we have still discovered less than half of the items listed in medieval catalogues. Nevertheless, the surviving work allows us to appreciate his **stature** as an original philosopher, whose accomplishments extend across all fields of thought. He wrote **enduring** works on logic, physics, metaphysics, music, and politics, as well as important commentaries on both Aristotle and Plato.

Little reliable information about Alfarabi's life has survived. The **extant** sources all date from at least three centuries after his death. He was probably born in what is now Kazakhstan around 870, and died 950. He spent most of his active career, which was largely devoted to teaching, writing, and his studies, in Baghdad. There has been speculation that he also studied in **Byzantium**, because of his interest in Greek language and thought, but this has





never been verified. He left Baghdad due to political unrest toward the end of his life and may have died in Damascus.

What do you think? Did you know about Al-Farabi? Let me know in the comments below.

Abu Nasr al-Farabi is widely regarded as the founder of philosophy within the Islamic world.

يعتبر أبو نصر الفارابي على نطاق واسع مؤسس الفلسفة داخل العالم الإسلامي.

Although he had some noteworthy predecessors, such as al-Kindi and al-Razi, he was the first philosopher of his **epoch** to command the unqualified respect of future generations.

على الرغم من أنه كان لديه بعض الأسلاف الجديرون بالذكر، مثل الكندي والرازي، فقد كان أول فيلسوف في عصره يحظى بالاحترام المطلق من الأجيال المستقبلية.

Ibn Sina, Ibn Rushd, and Musa ben Maimon, all considered many of Alfarabi's themes and left written testimony of their admiration for him.

نظر ابن سينا وابن رشد وموسى بن ميمون في العديد من مواضيع الفارابي وتركوا شهادات مكتوبة عن إعجابهم به.

He became known as the "second teacher," that is, second only to Aristotle.

أصبح يعرف باسم "المعلم الثاني"، أي بعد أرسطو فقط.

As far as Alfarabi's writings are concerned, we have discovered less than half of the items listed in medieval catalogues.

وفيما يتعلق بكتابات الفارابي، اكتشفنا أقل من نصف العناوين المدرجة في كتالوجات العصور الوسطى.

Nevertheless, the surviving work allows us to appreciate his **stature** as an original philosopher, whose accomplishments extend across all fields of thought.

ومع ذلك، فإن العمل الباقي يسمح لنا بتقدير مكانته كفيلسوف مبتكر، تمتد إنجازاته عبر جميع مجالات التفكير.



He wrote **enduring** works on logic, physics, metaphysics, music, and politics, as well as important commentaries on both Aristotle and Plato.

كتب أعمالاً مستمرة في المنطق والفيزياء والميتافيزيقيا والموسيقى والسياسة ، بالإضافة إلى تعليقات مهمة على كل من أرسطو وأفلاطون.

Little reliable information about Alfarabi's life has survived.

نبت معلومات قليلة موثوقة عن حياة الفارابي.

The **extant** sources all date from at least three centuries after his death.

تعود المصادر الموجودة جميعها إلى ما لا يقل عن ثلاثة قرون بعد وفاته.

He was probably born in what is now Kazakhstan around 870, and died in 950.

ربما ولد في ما هو الآن كازاخستان حوالي 870، وتوفي في 950.

He spent most of his active career, which was largely devoted to teaching, writing, and his studies, in Baghdad.

قضى معظم حياته المهنية النشطة والتي كانت مكرسة إلى حد كبير للتدريس والكتابة ودراساته في بغداد.

There has been speculation that he also studied in **Byzantium**, because of his interest in Greek language and thought, but this has never been verified.

كانت هناك تكهنات بأنه درس أيضاً في بيزنطة، بسبب اهتمامه باللغة والفكر اليوناني ، ولكن لم يتم التحقق من ذلك أبداً.

He left Baghdad due to political unrest toward the end of his life and may have died in Damascus.

غادر بغداد بسبب الاضطرابات السياسية قرب نهاية حياته وربما مات في دمشق.

What do you think? Did you know about Al-Farabi? Let me know in the comments below?

ما رأيك؟ هل كنت تعلم عن الفارابي؟ قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل.





## Infrared

الأشعة تحت الحمراء

The human eye cannot see **infrared** light.

عين الإنسان لا يمكنها رؤية الأشعة تحت الحمراء.

## Ultraviolet

الأشعة فوق البنفسجية

A sunblock cream can help prevent damage from **ultraviolet** light exposure.

يمكن أن يساعد كريم واقٍ للشمس في منع الضرر الناتج عن التعرض للأشعة فوق البنفسجية.

Did you know that an ostrich's eye is bigger than its brain?

Did you know that the most commonly used letter in the English alphabet is E?

Did you know that goldfish can see both **infrared** and **ultraviolet** light?

Did you know that cats spend 66% of their life asleep?

Did you know that honey is the only natural food which never spoils?

Did you know that Coca-Cola originally contained cocaine?

Did you know that if you add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 consecutively (1 + 2 + 3...) it totals 5050?

Did you know that an octopus pupil is rectangular?

Did you know that rubber bands last longer when kept refrigerated?

Did you know that the opposite sides of a six-sided die always





adds up to 7?

Did you know that there are more chickens than people?

Did you know that the doorbell was invented in 1831?

Did you know that more people are allergic to cows' milk than any other food?

What do you think?

Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode?

Let me know in the comments below.

Did you know that an ostrich's eye is bigger than its brain?

هل تعلم أن عين النعام أكبر من مخها؟

Did you know that the most commonly used letter in the English alphabet is E?

هل تعلم أن الحرف الأكثر استخدامًا في الأبجدية الإنجليزية هو E؟

Did you know that goldfish can see both **infrared** and **ultraviolet** light?

هل تعلم أن السمك الذهبي يمكنه رؤية كل من الأشعة تحت الحمراء والأشعة فوق البنفسجية؟

Did you know that cats spend 66% of their life asleep?

هل تعلم أن القطط تقضي 66% من حياتها نائمة؟

Did you know that honey is the only natural food which never spoils?

هل تعلم أن العسل هو الغذاء الطبيعي الوحيد الذي لا يفسد؟

Did you know that Coca-Cola originally contained cocaine?

هل تعلم أن الكوكاكولا كانت تحتوي في الأصل على الكوكايين؟

Did you know that if you add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 consecutively (1 + 2 + 3...) it totals 5050?

هل تعلم أنه إذا قمت بجمع كل الأرقام من 1 إلى 100 على التوالي (1 + 2 + 3 ...) يبلغ الإجمالي 5050؟



Did you know that an octopus pupil is rectangular?

هل تعلم أن بؤبؤ عين الأخطبوط مستطيل؟

Did you know that rubber bands last longer when kept refrigerated?

هل تعلم أن الأربطة المطاطية تدوم لفترة أطول عند حفظها في الثلاجة؟

Did you know that the opposite sides of a six-sided die always adds up to 7?

هل تعلم أن الجوانب المقابلة للنرد ذا الجوانب الستة يكون إجماليها دائماً 7؟

Did you know that there are more chickens than people?

هل تعلم أن هناك دجاج أكثر من الناس؟

Did you know that the doorbell was invented in 1831?

هل تعلم أن جرس الباب اخترع عام 1831؟

Did you know that more people are allergic to cows' milk than any other food?

هل تعلم أن المزيد من الناس لديهم حساسية من حليب الأبقار أكثر من أي طعام آخر؟

What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

Did you say "iKnow" throughout today's episode?

هل قلت "iKnow" أثناء حلقة اليوم؟

Let me know in the comments below.

قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل.



## Doctrine

عقيدة / مذهب

The goals of the party became sacred **doctrines** that cannot be violated or contradicted.

أصبحت أهداف الحزب مذاهب مقدسة لا يمكن انتهاكها أو التناقض معها.

## Mercantilism

مذهب تجاري اقتصادي

The rise of Britain can be attributed largely to success-ful and sustained **mercantilism**.

يمكن أن ينسب نهوض بريطانيا إلى حد كبير إلى المذهب التجاري الناجح والمستدام.

## Bottleneck (v)

عنق الزجاجة / يقيّد

The processor is **bottlenecking** his computer's performance.

يقوم المعالج بتقييد أداء جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص به.





Following the last episode, during and after the collapse of the Swedish economy, the main economic **doctrine** that was followed almost everywhere in the world at the time was "**Mercantilism**", which means that every state views itself as being at an economical war with the next, aiming to import as little as possible and export as much as possible while piling up gold and silver. But the problem is, by following that economical system, your economy can only be as big as the amount of gold and silver that you have.

One person who opposed following that system was Nicholas Barbon, he had a different idea. He believed that gold and silver don't have innate value, but whatever their market value is at any point in time. Therefore, instead of stockpiling gold and silver to grow the economy, people should move entirely to paper money.

Another issue with the obligation to have the money tied to the supply of gold and silver was that if you're gonna print out money to loan it to people, you have to have the gold and silver to back it up. And this is what bankers at the time believed to be **bottlenecking** their state's economy. The need for a central bank increased especially because when each bank first started printing out banknotes, they used to have their own special banknote. So, in each state, you would have as many different banknotes as there are banks. Since that wasn't convenient at all, having a central bank to take over the economic function of the state was almost non-negotiable. Which in turn would make each country have a unified banknote of their own instead of having multiple.

But the thing is, having the idea of paper money being good is one thing and actually getting people to believe and trust in dealing with paper money that doesn't have a gold or silver back up, and take paper money at its face value - is a different story. Since for so long, paper money, or banknotes, were always tied to the amount of gold and silver that was at the bank which was called "the gold standard". By having a central bank, it would also be easier for people to trust the entire idea of paper





money, especially if the central bank was government owned.

The main problem with having paper money without the gold standard, was if it goes unregulated, meaning that if the central bank at any given time printed out too many banknotes, that would cause inflation, which means that each banknote that's printed, is worth less than the last. That's why people trusted the gold standard more than anything. But that changed when both world wars happened. During WW1 and WW2 the US exported so many goods that they had almost everyone's gold. After both WWs ended, most countries were in massive debt, and they could no longer have the gold standard, since, well, they had no gold. So instead, those countries tied their own currency to the US dollar, meaning that instead of having a gold backup, the backup for their currency was the US dollar. And since the US had almost everyone's gold, they still followed the gold standard. The main problem with that is, after WW2, when countries decided that they would turn in their currency in exchange for US dollars and claim the gold, along with the US having both the war in Vietnam and cold war, they just could not afford following the gold standard and having to give everyone gold in exchange for the dollar. Which led president Richard Nixon to finally take the step to take the US dollar off the gold standard.

With that, the gold standard was no longer, that's how paper money became what we know today, a piece of paper that everyone just believes to have it's own value, without it being backed up by anything.

What do you think? Did you enjoy this series? Let me know in the comments below.





Following the last episode, during and after the collapse of the Swedish economy, the main economic **doctrine** that was followed almost everywhere in the world at the time was "**Mercantilism**".

بعد الحلقة الأخيرة، أثناء انهيار الاقتصاد السويدي وبعده، كانت العقيدة الاقتصادية الرئيسية التي اتبعت في كل مكان تقريباً في العالم في ذلك الوقت هي "المذهب التجاري".

Which means that every state views itself as being at an economical war with the next, aiming to import as little as possible and export as much as possible while piling up gold and silver.

مما يعني أن كل دولة ترى نفسها في حالة حرب اقتصادية مع الدولة التالية، تهدف لاستيراد أقل قدر ممكن وتصدير أكبر قدر ممكن في حين تكويم الذهب والفضة.

But the problem is, by following that economical system, your economy can only be as big as the amount of gold and silver that you have.

لكن المشكلة هي أنه باتباع هذا النظام الاقتصادي، فإن اقتصادك لا يمكن أن يكون أكبر من كمية الذهب والفضة التي لديك.

One person who opposed following that system was Nicholas Barbon, he had a different idea. He believed that gold and silver don't have innate value, but whatever their market value is at any point in time.

أحد الأشخاص الذين عارضوا اتباع هذا النظام كان نيكولاس باربون، كان لديه فكرة مختلفة. كان يعتقد أن الذهب والفضة ليس لهما قيمة فطرية، ولكن مهما كانت قيمتهما السوقية في أي وقت.

Therefore, instead of stockpiling gold and silver to grow the economy, people should move entirely to paper money.

لذلك، بدلاً من تخزين الذهب والفضة لتنمية الاقتصاد، يجب على الناس الانتقال بالكامل إلى النقود الورقية.

Another issue with the obligation to have the money tied to the supply of gold and silver was that if you're gonna print out money to loan it to people, you have to have the gold and silver to back it up.

هناك مشكلة أخرى تتعلق بالالتزام بربط الأموال بإمدادات الذهب والفضة وهي أنك إذا كنت ستطبع الأموال لإقراضها للناس، فيجب أن يكون لديك الذهب والفضة لدعمها.





And this is what bankers at the time believed to be **bottle-necking** their state's economy. The need for a central bank increased especially because when each bank first started printing out banknotes, they used to have their own special banknote. So, in each state, you would have as many different banknotes as there are banks.

وهذا ما كان يعتقد المصرفيون في ذلك الوقت أنه يفسد اقتصاد دولتهم. زادت الحاجة إلى بنك مركزي خاصة عندما بدأ كل بنك بطباعة الأوراق النقدية لأول مرة، كان لكل منهم أوراق نقدية خاصة بهم. لذلك في كل ولاية سيكون لديك العديد من الأوراق النقدية المختلفة كعدد البنوك.

Since that wasn't convenient at all, having a central bank to take over the economic function of the state was almost non-negotiable. Which in turn would make each country have a unified banknote of their own instead of having multiple.

نظراً لأن هذا لم يكن مناسباً على الإطلاق، كان وجود بنك مركزي لتولي الوظيفة الاقتصادية للدولة أمراً غير قابل للتفاوض تقريباً. وهذا بدوره سيجعل كل دولة لديها عملة ورقية موحدة خاصة بها بدلا من وجود عدة عملات نقدية.

But the thing is, having the idea of paper money being good is one thing and actually getting people to believe and trust in dealing with paper money that doesn't have a gold or silver back up, and take paper money at its face value - is a different story.

لكن المشكلة هي أن فكرة أن النقود الورقية جيدة هي شيء واحد وجعل الناس يؤمنون ويثقون في التعامل مع النقود الورقية الغير مربوطة باحتياطي من الذهب أو الفضة، وأخذ النقود الورقية بقيمتها - هي قصة مختلفة.

Since for so long, paper money, or banknotes, were always tied to the amount of gold and silver that was at the bank which was called "the gold standard".

بما أنه لفترة طويلة كانت النقود الورقية أو الأوراق النقدية مرتبطة دائماً بكمية الذهب والفضة الموجودة في البنك والتي كانت تسمى "المعيار الذهبي".

By having a central bank, it would also be easier for people to trust the entire idea of paper money, especially if the central bank was government owned.

من خلال وجود بنك مركزي، سيكون من الأسهل على الناس أن يثقوا بفكرة النقود الورقية بأكملها، خاصة إذا كان البنك المركزي حكومياً.





The main problem with having paper money without the gold standard, was if it goes unregulated, meaning that if the central bank at any given time printed out too many banknotes, that would cause inflation, which means that each banknote that's printed, is worth less than the last.

كانت المشكلة الرئيسية في وجود النقود الورقية دون المعيار الذهبي، أنه إذا كانت غير منظمة، مما يعني أنه إذا قام البنك المركزي في أي وقت بطباعة الكثير من الأوراق النقدية، فإن ذلك قد يتسبب في التضخم، مما يعني أن كل ورقة نقدية مطبوعة تكون قيمتها أقل من التي تسبقها.

That's why people trusted the gold standard more than anything. But that changed when both world wars happened. During WW1 and WW2 the US exported so many goods that they had almost everyone's gold.

لهذا السبب يثق الناس بالمعيار الذهبي أكثر من أي شيء آخر. لكن ذلك تغير عندما وقعت الحربان العالميتان. خلال الحربين العالميتين الأولى والثانية، قامت الولايات المتحدة بتصدير العديد من السلع لدرجة أنها كانت تمتلك ذهب الجميع تقريباً.

After both WWs ended, most countries were in massive debt, and they could no longer have the gold standard, since, well, they had no gold.

بعد انتهاء كل من الحربين العالميتين، كانت معظم البلدان لديها ديون ضخمة ولم يعد بإمكانها اتباع المعيار الذهبي لأنه..حسناً، لم يكن لديهم ذهب.

So instead, those countries tied their own currency to the US dollar, meaning that instead of having a gold backup, the backup for their currency was the US dollar, since the US had almost everyone's gold, they still followed the gold standard.

وبدلاً من ذلك، ربطت تلك الدول عملاتها بالدولار الأمريكي، مما يعني أنه بدلاً من امتلاك احتياطي من الذهب، كان الاحتياطي لعملتها هو الدولار الأمريكي، نظراً لأن الولايات المتحدة كان لديها كل الذهب تقريباً، فإنها كانت لا تزال تتبع معيار الذهب.

The main problem with that is, after WW2, when countries decided that they would turn in their currency in exchange for US dollars and claim the gold, along with the US having both the war in Vietnam and cold war, they just could not afford following the gold standard and having to give everyone gold in exchange for the dollar.

المشكلة الرئيسية في ذلك هي أنه بعد الحرب العالمية الثانية، عندما قررت البلدان أنها ستحول عملتها مقابل الدولار الأمريكي وتطالب بالذه، إلى جانب أن الولايات المتحدة كان لديها كل من حرب فيتنام والحرب الباردة، لم يكن بوسعهم تحمل تكاليف المعيار الذهبي وضرورة منح الجميع الذهب مقابل الدولار.



Which led president Richard Nixon to finally take the step to take the US dollar off the gold standard. With that, the gold standard was no longer, that's how paper money became what we know today, a piece of paper that everyone just believes to have it's own value, without it being backed up by anything.

الأمر الذي دفع الرئيس ريتشارد نيكسون إلى اتخاذ خطوة أخيرة لرفع الدولار الأمريكي عن معيار الذهب. مع ذلك ، أنتهى المعيار الذهبي، وهكذا أصبحت النقود الورقية ما نعرفه اليوم، قطعة من الورق يعتقد الجميع أن لها قيمتها الخاصة ، دون أن يتم دعمها بأي شيء.

What do you think? Did you enjoy this series? Let me know in the comments below.

ما رأيك؟ هل استمتعت بهذه السلسلة؟ قولوا لي في التعليقات بالأسفل.





## Get the hang of something

*to learn to do something well*

- Idioms are actually fun once you **get the hang of them**.
- Soon, you will **get the hang of the language** and you will be able to express yourself very well.

## Get the picture

*to understand a situation*

- A: Tom, can I borrow some money?  
B: I'm afraid I can't lend you any money. I lost my job and I'm behind on rent already.  
A: Say no more, I **get the picture**.
- I get, I get, I **get the picture**, I know. I see what's going on here, okay?

## Get the wrong end of the stick Get hold of the wrong end of the stick

*to misunderstand something*

- That's not what I meant. You **got the wrong end of the stick**, Jack. I didn't mean to insult you.
- So, you see how easily people could **get the wrong end of the stick** from Jesus' teaching here.



## Get your head around something

*to start to understand something*

- At first people laughed at him because they couldn't **get their head around what he was trying to tell them.**
- And then you say something I can't quite **get my head around.**
- I just couldn't **get my head around it.**

## Go in one ear and out the other

*to not pay attention to what's being said*

- I've told him so many times. It's just **goes in one ear and out the other.**
- It's almost like it **goes in one ear and out the other** and we go back into automatic pilot.

## A gray area

*not clear, falls between two categories*

- Downloading music from the internet has always been **a gray area.**
- I think that the message from the statement yesterday was extremely clear. I don't think it was **a gray area**; It was pretty black and white.



### **Not have a clue**

*to not know anything about something  
Or to have no idea what to do about something*

- I **don't have a clue** what I'm supposed to be doing.

### **Put two and two together**

*to correctly guess the truth about something from the information that you have*

- I **put two and two together** and realized that their relationship was over.
- So, she **put two and two together**, and she realized that her daughter was pregnant.

### **Put two and two together and make five**

*to think something is more exciting than it really is*

- A: How did she think you were in love with her?  
B: I was just being nice to her but clearly, she had **put two and two together and made five**.

### **Read between the lines**

*to understand the real meaning of something even though it was not mentioned*

- She said she could afford buying a new house, but **reading between the lines** I don't think she has enough money.
- Read between the lines, Theo. **Read between the lines!**



### **Jump to conclusions**

*to guess and you quickly make decisions about something you don't have enough information about it*

- Forgive me. I thought you were married. I shouldn't **jump to conclusions**.
- Let me explain first as I don't want you to **jump to the conclusion** that this is your fault.
- Doctors are always careful not to **leap to conclusions**. = jump
- Take a deep breath. Don't **jump to a conclusion**. You don't know what she's doing on her iPhone. So just relax. Take it easy.

### **Up to speed**

*You always know every new information  
Or You're staying up to date*

- A: Why do you always watch news channels?  
B: Because I'm trying to be **up to speed** with what's going on in the world.
- This is your first day back to work after a long vacation, I think I should bring you **up to speed** on everything that happened while you were away.

### **Take something on board**

*to take all the information in your head, think about them and understand them*

- I listened to them, **took their comments on board**, and then made a decision.

**Take something on board = Get your head around something**



# Idiom Podium

# 3

Level 3

## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the words in the boxes.

ear

clue

hang

picture

stick

area

1. I soon began to get the \_\_\_\_ of the new filing system.
2. Anna doesn't have a \_\_\_\_ how to talk to children.
3. The difference between telling a lie and not telling the whole truth is a gray \_\_\_\_.
4. I thought she was paying for dinner but I must have got the wrong end of the \_\_\_\_.
5. Brad tried to remember the directions but they seemed to have gone in one \_\_\_\_ and out the other.
6. The inspector spent a few minutes with the victim and soon began to get the \_\_\_\_.

## Exercise 2

Match sentence halves 1–6 with A–F to make complete sentences.

12

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. We saw them together in the restaurant and it was so easy to...            | A. ...read between the lines.                     |
| 2. I've told them I'm a vegetarian many times but they just don't...          | B. ...take it on board.                           |
| 3. I always pay attention, and that's why I'm always able to...               | C. ...had put two and two together and made five. |
| 4. I've learnt a lot about the new strategy and I'll run a training day to... | D. ...Jump to conclusions.                        |
| 5. Why people are scared of new ideas is something I've never been able to... | E. ...get my head around.                         |
| 6. Unfortunately, the children were disappointed; they...                     | F. ...bring you all up to speed.                  |

12



## Exercise 3

Complete the sentences. Choose the best answers.

1. Then you click 'save' and move the file to here. Do you **read between the lines** / **get the picture** / **put two and two together**?
2. It's going to take me a couple of days to get **up to speed** / **the picture** / **the wrong end of the stick** with the new project.
3. This is a very difficult exercise. I just can't **jump to conclusions** / **go in one ear and out the other** / **get my head round it**.
4. Don't worry. You'll soon **get the hang of it** / **jump to conclusions** / **get the wrong end of the stick**.
5. Listen to all the evidence and don't **take it on board** / **jump to conclusions** / **get your head around it**.
6. Adam shook his head; he didn't **put two and two together** / **read between the lines** / **have a clue** how to fix this.

## Exercise 4

Replace the underlined words with the correct idioms in the boxes.

12

get hold of the wrong end of the stick	get the hang of it	get the picture
go in one ear and out the other	haven't got a clue	read between the lines

1. You don't have to explain it anymore. I understand the situation.
2. He doesn't listen carefully, and tends to misunderstand.
3. I don't think I'll be to do the accounts. I know nothing about book keeping.
4. They haven't actually said anything is wrong, but I can sense it.
5. It's difficulty at first, but after a bit of practice, you learn how to do it.
6. You have to repeat everything to them. Whatever you say will be forgotten immediately afterwards!

12

48





## The Answer

### Exercise 1

1. hang
2. clue
3. area
4. stick
5. ear
6. picture

### Exercise 2

1. D
2. B
3. A
4. F
5. E
6. C

### Exercise 3

1. get the picture
2. up to speed
3. get my head round it
4. get the hang of it
5. jump to conclusions
6. have a clue

### Exercise 4

1. get the picture
2. get hold of the wrong end of the stick
3. haven't got a clue
4. read between the lines
5. get the hang of it
6. go in one ear and out the other



## **Bear/Keep something in mind**

*to remember something that is very important*

- **Keep in mind** that some places are more dangerous than others for women travelling alone.

## **Cross your mind**

*if something crosses your mind, you suddenly think of it*

- It **crossed my mind** that she might be lying about her age.
- Going to college never **crossed her mind** as she knew how expensive it is.

## **Food for thought**

*if you give someone food for thought, you make them think hard*

- He knows so much that listening to him always gives me **food for thought**.

## **A gut feeling**

*a feeling or a reaction that happens fast without reasons*

- Jack had **a gut feeling** that Sarah was lying.

We can also say "**a gut feeling, a gut instinct, a gut reaction**" they're all the same.

## **Lose the plot**

*if someone loses the plot, they become confused or crazy or no longer know how to deal with a situation*

- Vicky works so many hours that she started **losing the plot**. She is making mistakes and keeps falling asleep on the job.

Memory and mind



### **Miles away**

*if someone is miles away, they are completely unaware of what is happening because they are thinking deeply about something else*

- You didn't hear a word I said, did you? You were **miles away**.

### **A mind like a sieve**

*if you have a mind like a sieve or a brain like a sieve, you have a bad memory and often forget things*

- He lost his keys again. He's got **a mind like a sieve**.

### **Fill in the blanks.**

Fortunately, she knew that he had .....



Memory and mind



### Off the top of your head

*if you comment on something off the top of your head, what you are about to say is not thought of previously. You haven't thought of it before saying it and it might not be correct*

- A: How much does a house in Cairo cost?  
B: **Off the top of my head**, I'd say about 50,000\$.

### Off your head

*very strange or foolish*

- You must be **off your head** to continue living in this very expensive city after losing your job.

### On the tip of your tongue

*if a comment or a question is on the tip of your tongue, you really want to say it or ask it, but you decide not to say it*

**or**

*if a word or a name or an answer is on the tip of your tongue, you know it and you can almost remember it but you just don't*

- It was **on the tip of my tongue** to tell her that I saw him with another girl, but I said nothing.
- Do you remember that guy who gave us the tickets? oh, what was his name? Oh, it's **on the tip of my tongue**! That's annoying, why can't I remember his name?

Memory and mind



## Out of your mind

*if you say that someone is out of their mind, you mean that they are very stupid*

- You spent five hundred dollars on a jacket! Are you **out of your mind**?

## Going/Out of your mind with... = to feel something strongly

*if you say that someone is out of their mind with worry, you mean that they are extremely worried*

- She's **out of her mind** with worry, she hasn't seen her husband in days.
- She's **going of her mind** with worry, she hasn't seen her husband in days.

## Rack your brain

*to think very hard about something or try very hard to remember it*

- They asked me for fresh ideas, so I **racked my brain** for the whole day.
- Bob **racked his brain** trying to remember where he had put his keys.

We can also say "**rack your brains**" the plural form. Both are ok and widely used.

## Ring a bell

*if something rings a bell, it is slightly familiar to you and you know you have heard it before, but you don't remember it fully*

- The name **rings a bell** but I can't remember where I've heard it.

Memory and mind



# Idiom Podium

# 6

Level 3

## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the words in the boxes. Some of the sentences have more than one answer.

head

mind

brain

thought

brains

1. Do you have the memory of an elephant or a \_\_\_\_\_ like a sieve?
2. You are mad. Totally, completely and utterly off your \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He was behaving as if he was out of his \_\_\_\_\_.
4. In the previous lessons, I already have given you plenty of food for \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Off the top of your \_\_\_\_\_, what do you know about Vitamin C?
6. Rack your \_\_\_\_\_ and tell me everything you know about him.

12

## Exercise 2

Decide if the following sentences are true (✓) or false (✗).

1. If something crosses your mind, you forget about it.
2. If something rings a bell, it reminds you of something.
3. If you have a gut reaction to something, you have spent a long time thinking about it.
4. If you say something off the top of your head, you are very strange and dangerous.
5. If something is food for thought, it makes you think.
6. If you are racking your brain, you aren't thinking very hard.

12



# Idiom Podium

# 6

Level 3

## Exercise 3

Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.

1. Do you know anyone called Frascati? – Well the name \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) racks my brains      b) rings a bell      c) is miles away
2. Dr Barth, what is the greatest single thought that ever \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) rang a bell      b) racked your brains      c) crossed your mind
3. You don't know anyone else who might be free? – Not \_\_\_\_\_, no.  
a) on the tip of my tongue      b) crossing my mind      c) off the top of my head
4. I'm just trying to remember his name; it's \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) racking my brains      b) on the tip of my tongue      c) crossing my mind
5. Did you ask me a question? I'm sorry, I was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) miles away      b) out of my mind      c) ringing a bell
6. Someone mentioned this point recently and I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to think who it was.  
a) out of my mind      b) racking my brains      c) bearing it in mind

## Exercise 4

Correct the idioms in these sentences.

12

1. Business has been very bad and the management seem to have **racked the plot**.
2. You can withdraw money at other banks but **bear in thought** that they might charge a handling fee.
3. You are **off your mind** if you think I'll help you commit a crime!
4. **Off the top of his mind**, he couldn't think of an excuse she would believe.
5. The after-dinner speaker provided us with plenty of **thought food**.
6. Her name was **on the top of my tongue**, but I just couldn't get it.
7. Personally, I trust my **gut action** to tell me when I'm right.
8. It **crossed my head** that I hadn't heard the children for a while.

16

52



## The Answer

### Exercise 1

1. brain
2. head
3. mind
4. thought
5. head
6. brains

### Exercise 2

1. false
2. true
3. false
4. false
5. true
6. false

### Exercise 3

1. rings a bell
2. crossed your mind
3. off the top of my head
4. on the tip of my tongue
5. miles away
6. racking my brains

### Exercise 4

1. lost the plot
2. bear in mind
3. out of your mind
4. Off the top of his head
5. food for thought
6. on the tip of my tongue
7. gut reaction
8. crossed my mind





## **At cross purposes**

*if two people are at cross purposes, they think they are talking about or trying to do the same thing but in fact they are talking about or trying to do different things*

- He realized that they have been talking **at cross purposes**. They weren't offering him the job.
- Because that's working **at cross purposes**, that's absolutely wrong!

## **Come out of your shell**

*to become less shy and more confident*

- Mary used to be very shy, but I think she has **come out of her shell**.
- It's time for you to **come out of that shell**.
- She's so confident now. I think the job has **brought her out of her shell**.

## **Find common ground**

*to come to an agreement on something*

- The leaders of the two countries met to **find common ground**.
- Try to **find common ground** and actually move solutions forward.

Communicating



## From the horse's mouth

*if you get a piece of information from the horse's mouth, you get it directly from someone who is involved and knows the most about it*

- A: Did you know that Michelle quit?  
B: I don't believe it. I will go ask her and hear it straight **from the horse's mouth**.
- So, you can say, right **from the horse's mouth**, right from Google, no one can guarantee a number one ranking.

## Get your (wires/lines) crossed

*to have a misunderstanding or miscommunication with someone else*

- I'm sorry I'm late, I thought we were getting here at 8—we must have **gotten our lines crossed**.
- This is where we kind of **get our wires crossed**.

## Go off (on/at) a tangent

*if someone goes off at a tangent, they start saying or doing something that is not directly connected with what they were saying or doing before*

- Our teacher usually **goes off on a tangent** and starts talking about something totally unrelated to the book.
- I think I'm gonna **go off on a tangent** if that's all right.

Communicating



## **Hear something (through/on) the grapevine**

*to hear something from someone who has heard it from someone who has heard it from someone, basically, gossip*

- I **heard on the grapevine** that Stacy and Mark are getting a divorce.
  - She **heard through the grapevine** that he was looking for a job.
- 

## **In black and white**

*if you say that something is in black and white, you mean that you have proof, a written proof of it*

- We have a clear rule **in black and white** that this action is illegal.
  - I have it **in black and white** that I can take three weeks of vacation each year.
  - It was there, **in black and white**. I did it. I wrote it.
- 

## **In the loop**

*a part of a group who have information about a specific thing*

- Not many people knew what was going on but the president was certainly **in the loop**.
  - If you want to be **in the loop** all the time, you can say, send me everything.
- 

Communicating



### **Keep someone posted**

*if you keep someone posted, you continue giving them all the latest information about a situation*

- She made me promise to **keep her posted** on everything while she was in London.
- **Keep me posted** on everything and best of luck to you

**Keep someone posted** = **keep someone in the loop** about something

### **Let the cat out of the bag**

*to disclose a secret, often by mistake*

- How did she know about it? Who **let the cat out of the bag**?
- I know you don't want to **let the cat out of the bag** before the speech.

### **Put someone in the picture**

*if you put someone in the picture, you tell them about something they need to know about*

- Before you start working, let me **put you in the picture** and tell you how this office works.
- Just make sure you **put the boss in the picture** about the progress of this project. He needs to know every detail.
- Come to life. **Put yourself in the picture.**

Communicating



## Spill the beans

*to reveal a secret*

- He was afraid that I was going to **spill the beans** to the police.
- We planned a surprise party for him, but Kate accidentally **spilled the beans** to him at work.

## Touch base

*if you touch base with someone, you contact them and you get in touch after a long time*

- I was just calling to **touch base** since I haven't heard from you for a long time.
- I will ask my friend to **touch base** with you and see if he could help.

*to contact or get in touch with someone generally*

- I will ask my friend to **touch base** with you and see if he could help.

## Fill in the blanks.

Sometimes, even your friends .....



Communicating



# Idiom Podium

9

Level 3

Sometimes, even your friends **let the cat out of the bag**.



## Exercise 1

Match phrases 1–8 with A–H to make idioms from this unit.

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. go off at          | A. <b>the beg</b>           |
| 2. get your wires     | B. <b>base</b>              |
| 3. to be              | C. <b>a tangent</b>         |
| 4. keep someone       | D. <b>the beans</b>         |
| 5. spill              | E. <b>the picture</b>       |
| 6. touch              | F. <b>posted</b>            |
| 7. let the cat out of | G. <b>at cross purposes</b> |
| 8. put someone in     | H. <b>crossed</b>           |

## Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the words in the boxes. Some of the sentences have more than one answer.

out

from

at

in

off

on

1. Keep me \_\_\_\_\_ the loop, will you?

16



# Idiom Podium

9

Level 3

out

from

at

in

off

on

2. I wish she wouldn't keep going off \_\_\_\_ a tangent.
3. We heard a rumor \_\_\_\_ the grapevine.
4. Let me put you \_\_\_\_ the picture.
5. I heard all this straight \_\_\_\_ the horse's mouth.
6. I think they were arguing \_\_\_\_ cross purposes there.
7. She promised me she wouldn't let the cat \_\_\_\_ of the bag.
8. She really came \_\_\_\_ of her shell when the signing started.

16

## Exercise 3

Reorder the phrases to make sentences.

1. true / it must be / here **in black and white** / because it's
2. as you develop / keep me / the idea / **in the loop**
3. every week to / **touch base** / we meet / have lunch and
4. was moving / that the discussion / **off on a tangent** / I thought
5. she was doing / she asked him / on how / **to keep her posted**
6. paid / the office cleaner to / the newspaper reporter / **spill the beans**
7. the issue of / **find common ground** on / they managed to / rates of pay
8. going away / the family agreed that / would **bring him out of his shell** / to university

16



### Exercise 4

Make sentences 1-6 less formal. Replace the underlined words with the correct idioms A-F.

1. I haven't heard any news yet, but I'll inform you.
2. It was meant to be a surprise, but someone gave the secret away.
3. I heard a rumor that Penny and Alan are getting married.
4. It must be true. I heard it from a reliable source.
5. Let's meet up next week just to make contact again.
6. They support different teams but they agreed with each other when someone mentioned the off-side rule.

A. **let the cat out of the bag**

B. **heard on the grapevine**

C. **keep you posted**

D. **found common ground**

E. **heard it straight from the horse's mouth**

F. **touch base**

12

60





## The Answer

### Exercise 1

1. **C** - 2. **H** - 3. **G** - 4. **F**  
5. **D** - 6. **B** - 7. **A** - 8. **E**

### Exercise 3

- It must be true because it's here **in black and white**.
- Keep me **in the loop** as you develop the idea.
- We meet every week to have lunch and **touch base**.
- I thought that the discussion was moving **off on a tangent**.
- She asked him **to keep her posted** on how she was doing.
- The newspaper reporter paid the office cleaner to **spill the beans**.
- They managed to **find common ground** on the issue of rates of pay.
- The family agreed that going away to university would **bring him out of his shell**.

### Exercise 2

- in** the loop
- going off **at** a tangent
- heard a rumor **on** the grapevine
- put you **in** the picture
- from** the horse's mouth
- at** cross purposes
- let the cat **out** of the bag
- came **out** of her shell

### Exercise 4

1. **C** - 2. **A** - 3. **B** - 4. **E**  
5. **F** - 6. **D**



## **The bottom line**

*the most important fact about what you are discussing*

- Well, I think **the bottom line** is if you love somebody, you will accept them nomatter what.
- **The bottom line** is, is that we don't have a stronger partner anywhere in the world than the United Kingdom.
- **The bottom line** is your son is doing the right thing.

## **Cross that bridge when you come to it**

*if you say "I will **cross that bridge when I come to it**" you mean that you will deal with this problem when it happens, or if it happens.*

- A: Don't spend all your savings now. What are you going to do next year?  
B: I will **cross that bridge when I come to it**.
- A: You can't make me talk to you.  
B: No, I can't, but the police can.  
A: Fine, I **will cross that bridge when I come to it**.

## **Cut to the chase**

*if someone cuts to the chase, they start talking or dealing with the important stuff instead of wasting time with less important things*

- You know what? I've had enough of this, let's just **cut to the chase**.
- I will **cut to the chase** - we just don't have enough money for the project.
- Here's the problem with self-help books and seminars: they don't **cut to the chase**.

Priorities and decisions



## **The icing on the cake**

*if you describe something as the icing on the cake, you mean that it is an extra good thing that makes a good situation even better*

- He was already happy with his salary, **the icing on the cake** came when he received a large bonus.

*something bad added which made a bad situation worse*

- I lost my job today and the fact that my car broke down was **the icing on the cake**.

## **In two minds**

*if you are in two minds about something, you are not able to reach a decision or opinion about something*

- I'm **in two minds** about going to college. On one hand, it's required for most of the jobs, but on the other, it is very expensive.
- It shows you that everybody can be **two minds** about this.

## **Make a mountain out of a molehill**

*to talk or complain about small, unimportant problems as if it is important and serious*

- Don't **make a mountain out of a molehill**, it's really not a big deal.

Priorities and decisions



## On the back burner

*if there is something that needs high fire, they put it on the front burners but anything else that can wait or they are not in a hurry to finish*

- Linda put her career **on the back burner** after marrying a famous rich man.

### Fill in the blanks.

The nurse thought Jim was making .....



Priorities and decisions



The nurse thought Jim was making **a mountain of a molehill**.



## **Play it by ear**

*to deal with things as they happen, you don't make plans for the future*

- He never prepared his speeches, he always **played things by ear**.
- I don't know how to do it or what I'm doing, I'm just going to **play it by ear** and see how well it goes.

## **Sit on the fence**

*to refuse to give an opinion about something*

- You can't **sit on the fence** any longer—you need to choose who of these two we need to fire.
- These people **sit on the fence** because they don't know which way to go.

Priorities and decisions



## Split hairs

*if someone splits hairs, they argue about very small details. Or they try to find differences between things which are really very similar*

- Don't **split hairs**, I don't care whether he is 24 or 25.
- You lay out all the pros, the cons, you **split the hairs**, you go through every shade of gray.

## Stick to your guns

*to refuse to change your decision or opinion about something, even though other people are trying to tell you that you are wrong*

- Once you tell your children to do something, **stick to your guns** even if they get upset.
- You should **stick to your guns** and focus on the people that matter to you.

## Take a back seat

*to allow other people to have the power or responsibility*

- If you know anybody else who can manage this company, I will be happy to **take a back seat**.
- I **take a back seat** to nobody

## The tip of the iceberg

*if something is the tip of the iceberg, it is a small part of a very large problem*

- We get about 2,000 complaints every year and that's just **the tip of the iceberg**.

## Up in the air

*if an important decision or plan is up in the air, that means, it hasn't been decided yet*

- I was supposed to get a promotion this week but things are still **up in the air** because my boss is out of town.

Priorities and decisions



## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the words in the boxes.

by

of

to

in

on

1. We're just going to play it \_\_\_\_ ear.
2. This is just the tip \_\_\_\_ the iceberg.
3. let's put that decision \_\_\_\_ the back burner for now.
4. I'm \_\_\_\_ two minds about spending all that money at once.
5. He stuck \_\_\_\_ his guns in spite of their grumbling.
6. We'll cross that bridge when we come \_\_\_\_ it.

## Exercise 2

Match sentence halves 1-6 with A-F to make complete sentences.

12

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The bottom line is simply                  | A. and cut straight to the chase.                   |
| 2. We're going to play it by ear              | B. but let's not make a mountain out of a molehill. |
| 3. You will have to stop sitting on the fence | C. but I won't split hairs.                         |
| 4. The answer should have a capital letter    | D. and see how the next 24 hours go.                |
| 5. Let's skip the introductions               | E. that business is about money.                    |
| 6. We can't ignore this issue                 | F. and show where your loyalty lies.                |

## Exercise 3

Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.

12

1. 'They really believe in what I do and they want to enable me to do it.' She went on to explain her success: 'I'm very good, that's \_\_\_\_.'
- a) the bottom line      b) the tip of the iceberg      c) the back burner



2. Then he became really ill and had to put all his plans \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) up in the air      b) on the fence      c) on the back burner
3. 'What if you need another operation after this one?' – I'll \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) make a mountain out of a molehill      b) cross that bridge when I come to it      c) stick to my guns
4. The President accused his critics of being oversensitive and of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) playing it by ear      b) cutting to the chase      c) making a mountain out of a molehill
5. For four hours of questioning, Grommek \_\_\_\_\_, but by five o'clock he had changed his story.  
a) played it by ear      b) cut to the chase      c) stuck to his guns
6. She was \_\_\_\_\_ about whether or not to turn back.  
a) splitting hairs      b) in two minds      c) up in the air

## Exercise 4

Correct the idioms in these sentences.

12

1. The dates for the summit meeting are still **up on the fence** at the moment.
2. The police say that these numbers could just be the **top of the iceberg**.
3. He'll do what he can to make you change your mind, but you **stick on the back burner**.
4. I don't want to retire when I'm sixty years old but I'll **cut to the bridge** when I come to it.
5. She forgot her notes so she had to **play it by air** at the interview.
6. There just isn't any more money and that **sits on the bottom line**.
7. After he retires, Ken will be able to **sit in the back seat** in the family business.
8. I was proud to work for Ferrari, and to drive their fantastic cars was **the icing in the cake**.

16





## Exercise 5

Complete the sentences with idioms in this unit, changing the verb forms if necessary.

1. I was so pleased just to have passed the exam; coming first was \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I can't really say too much about who else I'm going to be working with at the moment because it's all very much \_\_\_\_\_ and anything could happen.
3. I never really had a plan for my life. I just \_\_\_\_\_. Neither of us is very ambitious and we have enough money.
4. She introduced herself and then said 'I'll \_\_\_\_\_: I have all the evidence I need to put you in prison for the next ten years.'
5. This is a misleading figure. There will be many hidden costs that we will discover as this project develops. I suggest that £1.4 billion is only \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Yet on this key issue, the government has chosen to \_\_\_\_\_, saying that schools must decide for themselves.

12

64



## The Answer

### Exercise 1

1. **by**
2. **of**
3. **on**
4. **in**
5. **to**
6. **to**

### Exercise 2

1. **E**
2. **D**
3. **F**
4. **C**
5. **A**
6. **B**

### Exercise 3

1. **the bottom line**
2. **on the back burner**
3. **cross that bridge when I come to it**
4. **making a mountain out of a molehill**
5. **stuck to his guns**
6. **in two minds**

### Exercise 4

1. **up in the air**
2. **tip of the iceberg**
3. **stick to your guns**
4. **cross that bridge**
5. **play it by ear**
6. **is the bottom line**
7. **sit on a back seat**
8. **the icing on the cake**

### Exercise 5

1. **the icing on the cake**
2. **up in the air**
3. **play it by ear**
4. **cut to the chase**
5. **the tip of the iceberg**
6. **sit on the fence**



## Break the ice

*if a person, event or activity breaks the ice, they make people feel more relaxed and comfortable in a social situation*

- Teachers usually **break the ice** with new classes by some fun activities.
- This presentation, with a few jokes, was a good **ice-breaker**.
- Do **ice-breakers** in your class. Use a discussion topic as an ice breaker.

*An **icebreaker** is the activity that is used to break the ice*

## Get off on the wrong foot

*to start a relationship or an activity badly*

- We **got off on the wrong foot** the first time we met, but she is my best friend now.
- I think we **got off on the wrong foot** if we ask ourselves how can we arrange things.

## Get on like a house on fire

*if two people get on like a house on fire, they quickly become close friends*

- I only had one conversation with her, and we **got on like a house on fire**.

## Get on someone's nerves

*if someone or something gets on your nerves, they make you very annoyed*

- She talks all the time and it **gets on my nerves**.
- But I am a truth teller. That's why they **get on my nerves**. Because I've got the truth and the don't.

Relationships



## Give someone the cold shoulder

*if someone gives you the cold shoulder, they stop being friendly to you, they start ignoring you, on purpose*

- A: What's wrong with Kate? She's been **giving me the cold shoulder** the whole day.  
B: She thinks you told the boss that she came late.
- Our neighbors **give us the cold shoulder**. Our parents don't approve of our lifestyles.

## Go back a long way / Go way back

*to have been friends for a very long time*

- Don't worry about Tom, I will talk to him. He and I **go back a long way**.
- You know, your mother and I **go way back**.

## Fill in the blanks.

Sometimes unlikely friends can .....



Relationships



Sometimes unlikely friends can **get on like a house on fire**.



## **Hit it off**

*if two people hit it off when they first meet, they like each other and get on well together*

- I had to leave the company because my boss was awful, we never really **hit it off**.
- Sarah, meet Jane, I think you two will **hit it off**.
- Yeah, I thought you guys might **hit it off**.

**Hit it off = Get on like a house on fire**

## **Sparks fly**

*if sparks fly between people, they get angry with each other and argue*

- The two managers have different plans for the business so, **sparks fly** whenever they are in a meeting together.

## **Your own flesh and blood**

*if someone is your own flesh and blood, they are a member of your family*

- You are **my own flesh and blood**; how could you spill the beans to the cops?

Relationships



## Leave someone in the lurch

*to leave someone without assistance, without help when they are in a difficult situation*

- My secretary **left me in the lurch** last month and I haven't found a replacement yet.
- But I thought well I can't **leave Kristin in the lurch**, but I was umm. What am I supposed to sing?

## On the rocks

*if a relationship is on the rocks, it has many difficulties and is likely to end*

- I heard on the grapevine that their relationship is **on the rocks**.
- So, people will come up to me every show, lots of people, and tell me their marriage is **on the rocks**.

## On the same wavelength

*if two people are on the same wavelength, they understand each other very well because they share the same interests and opinions*

- A: How does Indian food sound tonight?  
B: That's what I was going to suggest! We must be **on the same wavelength**.
- You have to get everybody **on the same wavelength** as you.

## Save face

*to do something so that people continue to respect you usually after an embarrassing situation*

- I was late to the meeting but I tried to **save face** by blaming it on traffic.
- Sometimes they lie to improve their image or **save face**, maybe to cover up an accident.

Relationships



## Exercise 1

Look at the sentences below. Which three idioms have the same meaning? Which idiom has the opposite meaning to these three?

1. Everyone around the table remained silent and I tried to think of a way of **breaking the ice**.
2. It's strange that her two ex-husbands **get on like a house on fire**!
3. Oh yes, we **go back a long way** – we went to nursery school together.
4. I'm afraid we got **off on the wrong foot** because I got her name wrong.
5. They are definitely **on the same wavelength** – both passionate about green politics.
6. We didn't really **hit it off** – we just aren't interested in the same things.

## Exercise 2

Match sentence halves 1–8 with A–H to make complete sentences.

12

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Whenever his mother was in the room,               | A. <b>definitely on the rocks.</b>           |
| 2. It's his stupid loud voice                         | B. <b>I was aware of sparks flying.</b>      |
| 3. Their business partnership was now                 | C. <b>treated them like dirt.</b>            |
| 4. She took his keys and his coat                     | D. <b>our own flesh and blood.</b>           |
| 5. They left because the manager                      | E. <b>and left him in the lurch.</b>         |
| 6. He was rude to her so she's decided that in future | F. <b>that gets on my nerves.</b>            |
| 7. We care about you because you are                  | G. <b>to help them save face.</b>            |
| 8. We pretended not to notice them leave,             | H. <b>she'll give him the cold shoulder.</b> |

16



## Exercise 3

Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.

1. You have started \_\_\_\_\_ by arriving late for our appointment.  
a) to save face      b) on the same wavelength      c) off on the wrong foot
2. He's highly educated and she's got no qualifications at all, but they managed to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) get off on the wrong foot      b) hit it off      c) go back a long way
3. Mr. Sen invited them all to dinner at his house to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) get off on the wrong foot      b) got on like a house on fire      c) break the ice
4. As soon as the prisoners arrive, the guards begin to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) treat them like dirt      b) get off on the wrong foot      c) leave them in the lurch
5. Luca's personal assistant quit suddenly and \_\_\_\_\_ so I'm doing some typing for him.  
a) left him in the lurch      b) treated him like dirt      c) got the cold shoulder
6. They argue all the time now. There's no doubt that their marriage is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) on fire      b) on the rocks      c) their own flesh and blood

## Exercise 4

Correct the idioms in these sentences.

1. When I saw her at the part, she just gave me the cold hands.
2. We used to argue a lot, but now we're getting on like a house in the lurch.
3. We go back on the rocks. We met when we were just children.
4. As soon as they met, they hit it on.

12





5. I find him a bit irritating. He really **gets on my sparks**.
6. We understand each other well. We're **on the same foot**.

12

## Exercise 5

Replace the underlined words with idioms from this unit in the correct form.

1. We get on well, but we have different views on politics. As soon as we start talking about politics, we have an argument – so we tend to avoid the subject.
2. Don't worry – I promised I would help you, and I won't abandon you.
3. Unfortunately, when we first met, we had a disagreement which ruined our relationship. But I'm sure that next time we meet, we can become friends.
4. I tried to say something funny just to ease the tension – but I don't think she found it very amusing.

8

60



## The Answer

### Exercise 1

The three idioms that have the same meaning are:

- B. **get on like a house on fire**
- E. **on the same wavelength**
- F. **hit it off**

The idiom that has the opposite meaning to these three is:

- D. **got off on the wrong foot**

### Exercise 2

- 1. **B**
- 2. **F**
- 3. **A**
- 4. **E**
- 5. **C**
- 6. **H**
- 7. **D**
- 8. **G**

### Exercise 3

- 1. **c**
- 2. **b**
- 3. **c**
- 4. **a**
- 5. **a**
- 6. **b**

### Exercise 4

- 1. gave me the cold **shoulder**
- 2. getting on like a house **on fire**
- 3. go back **a long way**
- 4. hit it **off**
- 5. gets on my **nerves**
- 6. on the same **wavelength**

### Exercise 5

- 1. **sparks fly**
- 2. **leave you in the lurch**
- 3. **got off on the wrong foot**
- 4. **break the ice**



## **Bend over backward(s)**

*to try very hard to help or please someone, even though it causes you trouble*

- We **bend over backwards** to make them feel welcome and they didn't thank us once.
- I've built an entire team made up of people who, just like my dad, will **bend over backwards** to delight you.

## **Be there for someone**

*if you are there for someone, you are ready to listen to their problems and to help and support them*

- Jimmy is a good friend. He's always **been there for me** when I needed help or advice.
- But while I'm working in full screen, Siri is **there for me** and helps me multitask.

## **Give and take**

*if you talk about give and take, you mean the way in which two people in a relationship accept that they cannot have everything that they want and that they must sometimes give the other person or group what they want*

- All good partnerships involve a bit of **give and take**.
- It's an open exchange of ideas, an opportunity for **give and take**.

## **Keep your chin up**

*to stay cheerful during difficult times*

- Richard was **keeping his chin up** yesterday despite losing his job.

## **Lend someone a hand**

*to help someone to do something*

- If I'd known you were having trouble, I could have **lent you a hand**.

Help and encouragement



## ***Hold someone's hand***

*if you hold someone's hand in an unfamiliar or difficult situation, you help and support them*

- Tony will **hold your hand** through the sale, deal with offers and advise on any problems.
- You're there for them, you **hold their hand**, you answer their questions.

## ***In the same boat***

*if two or more people are in the same boat, they are in the same unpleasant or difficult situation*

- Don't worry if you are going bald. 40 percent of men under 35 are **in the same boat**.
- And many of you people are **in the same boat**. Very important. So, let's get it done.

## **Fill in the blanks.**

The chickens are .....



Help and encouragement



The chickens are **in the same boat**.



## **Look the other way**

*to ignore something bad that is happening when you should be trying to stop it*

- I know I didn't follow the rules, but can't you just **look the other way**?
- Bribe the police to **look the other way** and not send her back to North Korea.

## **Meet someone halfway**

*to accept some of a person's opinions or wishes, so that you can come to an agreement with them or have a better relationship with them*

- The opposition is willing to **meet the president halfway** on his latest plans for the economy.
- And I thought it was my obligation to **meet him halfway**.

## **Put your heads together**

*to try to solve a problem together with other people*

- If there's a problem, we all just sit down, **put our heads together** and figure it out.

Help and encouragement



## A pat on the back

*if you give someone a pat on the back, you thank them or praise them for something they have done*

- The only reason she stays late at work is to receive **a pat on the back** from her boss.
- I thought the boss would **pat me on the back** and say, "Well done!" Instead, he fired me.
- You're the one who made all the sacrifices. You're the one who deserve **a pat on the back**.

## Sing someone's praises

*to praise someone highly*

- Smith continued to **sing Tony's praises**. "He's so different, he's so natural", he said.
- I would point you to some people that are not usually those that often **sing praises of the President**.

## Take someone under your wing

*to praise someone highly*

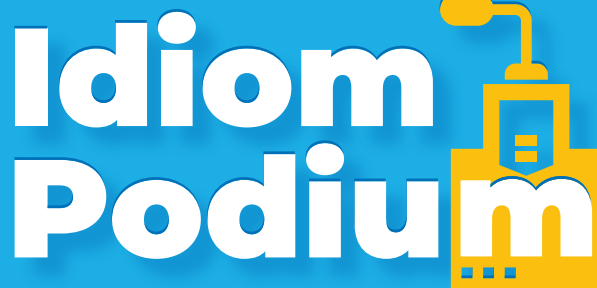
- She **took the little girl under her wing**, gave her advice and helped her prepare for the test.

## A (tower/pillar) of strength

*someone who gives you a lot of help or support during a difficult period of your life*

- My daughter was **a tower of strength** for me when I was sick.
- You know, she's **a little tower of strength**. I really appreciate that about you.

Help and encouragement



**Complete the sentences with the words in the boxes.**

*under*

1. I phoned to give you a pat \_\_\_\_\_ the back for saving the situation.
2. let's put our heads \_\_\_\_\_ and think of some people who could help.
3. As we're both \_\_\_\_\_ the same boat, it might be sensible to work together.
4. Most parents bend \_\_\_\_\_ backwards to treat their children equally.
5. Jane took us \_\_\_\_\_ her wing and showed us around.
6. I try to think positively and keep my chin \_\_\_\_\_.

## 12

**Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.**

- There is usually a fair amount of \_\_\_\_\_ and take in a trading relationship.  
a) pat                      b) give                      c) hand
- They want to negotiate and we're very willing to \_\_\_\_\_ them halfway.  
a) meet                    b) bend                    c) hold
- Hannah was happy to \_\_\_\_\_ a hand in practical ways if she could.  
a) pat                      b) lend                     c) take
- For most of the afternoon, mum had been \_\_\_\_\_ Cyril's praises.  
a) giving                  b) putting                 c) singing
- I Want to be \_\_\_\_\_ for my kids because my dad wasn't for me.  
a) there                    b) together                c) over
- The government finds it easiest to \_\_\_\_\_ the other way regarding this issue.  
a) look                     b) bend                    c) keep



## Exercise 3

Reorder the phrases to make sentences.

1. Women candidates / **bends over backwards** / to attract / the party
2. learn that / girls and boys / **give and take** / three must be / in all relationships
3. **lend a hand** with / the whole family / the harvest / has to
4. they must / sensible decision / in order to reach a / **put their heads together**
5. for you / you know / **be there** / I'll always

10

## Exercise 4

Choose the correct answer.

1. If you take someone under your wing, do you (**ignore** / **help**) them?
2. If you keep your chin up, are you being (**cheerful** / **miserable**)?
3. If you give someone a pat on the back, should they be (**pleased** / **offended**)?
4. If you bend over backwards, are you (**ignoring** / **trying to help**) someone?
5. If someone lends you a hand, are (**you being helpful** / **they being helpful to you**)?
6. If you hold someone's hand in a difficult situation, do you (**need** / **give**) help?

12

46





## The Answer

### Exercise 1

1. **on**
2. **together**
3. **in**
4. **over**
5. **under**
6. **up**

### Exercise 2

1. **b**
2. **a**
3. **b**
4. **c**
5. **a**
6. **a**

### Exercise 3

1. The party **bends over backwards** to attract women candidates.
2. In all relationships girls and boys learn that there must be **give and take**.
3. The whole family has to **lend a hand** with the harvest.
4. They must **put their heads together** in order to reach a sensible decision.
5. You know I'll always **be there** for you.

### Exercise 4

1. **help**
2. **cheerful**
3. **pleased**
4. **trying to help**
5. **they being helpful to you**
6. **give**



## Not your cup of tea

*to don't feel very interested or passionate about something*

- I've never been the greatest traveler. Sitting for hours on highways is **not really my cup of tea**.
- I don't have much time for TV. Books actually are **my cup of tea**. = I like them

## Have an ax to grind

*to have a strong opinion about something for personal selfish reasons*

- The president denied that he **had an ax to grind** and he stressed that he represents all the people of the country.
- Our scientists **have no ax to grind**. They just want to save the planet.
- I've done my homework number 1. Number 2 I don't **have an axe to grind** with anybody.

## In the picture

*to get someone involved or informed about a situation*

- Tell me everything, I want to be back **in the picture**.

## Jump on the bandwagon

*to join or follow something once it is successful or popular*

- A: "I thought your mom hated that man."  
B: "Well, he's the president now and very popular, so she decided to **jump on the bandwagon**."
- If everyone agrees with your opinion online more tend to **jump on the bandwagon**.

Involvement and interest



## Keep a low profile

*if you hold someone's hand in an unfamiliar or difficult situation, you help and support them*

- It's hard for celebrities to **keep a low profile** when they go out in public.
- Where's General Kelly? Where is our General Kelly? He likes to **keep a low profile**. Look at him sitting in the back, but, boy, is he watching?

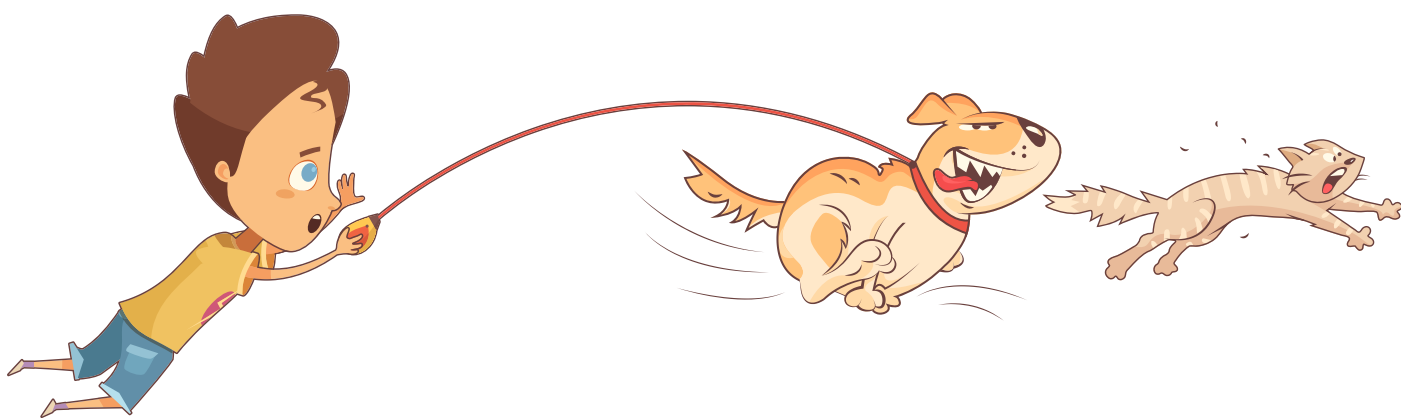
## A labor of love

*if you do something as a labor of love, you do it because you love it and enjoy it, not for money*

- Katherine spends all of her free time knitting baby clothes for her friends. It must be **a labor of love**.
- It's actually hard-work making these videos, but I'm not complaining as it is **a labor of love**.
- I'm very proud of this book, it's been **a labor of love** for twenty years, updating it every year.

## Fill in the blanks.

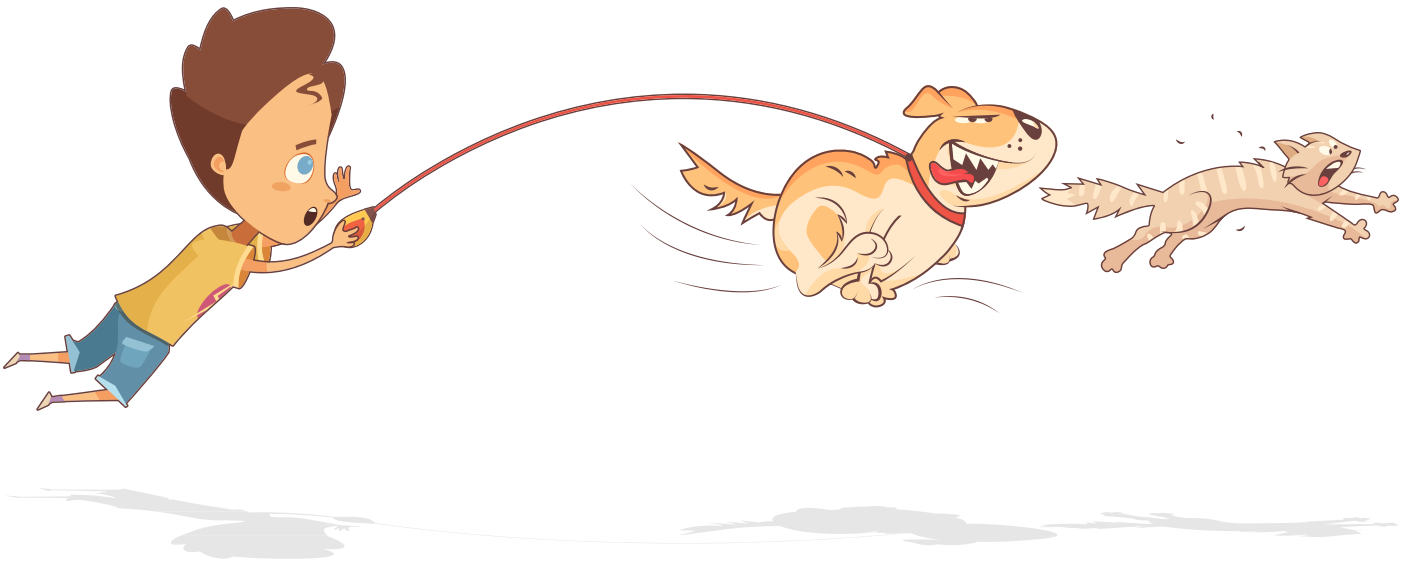
He decided that dog walking was just .....



Involvement and interest



He decided that dog walking was just **not his cup of tea**.



## Mean business

*to be serious*

- One of them pointed a gun at me. I could see he **meant business**.
- Mom sounded like she **means business**, so you better clean your room.
- Iran knows we **mean business** and they'll behave better.

## A nosey parker

*A nosey parker is someone who wants to know too much about other people*

- Olive is such **a nosey parker**! She likes to spy on her neighbors.

Involvement and interest



## **(Poke/stick) your nose into something** **Keep your nose out of something**

*to involve yourself in something that is not your business*

- Don't **poke your nose into my business**. I don't need your help.
- Nancy **keeps her nose out of everybody's business**. That's what I like most about her.
- So, this has to be one of the best jobs in the world. Mostly, I have the freedom to **poke my nose into almost everything** and learn.

## **Steer clear of something**

*to avoid someone or something on purpose*

- If you have dry skin, you should **steer clear of soap**.
- Try to **steer clear of the boss** today, he is yelling at everyone he sees.
- It seems like every time we get near change; we **steer clear of change**.

## **Try your hand at something**

*to try something new or try something for the first time*

- I need a new hobby. Maybe I'll **try my hand at painting**!
- I told my teacher, who was himself a translator, that I wanted to **try my hand at translation**.

Involvement and interest



## Up to your ears

*if you are up to your ears in work or in an unpleasant situation, you are very busy with it or are deeply involved in it*

- There's no way I can take a vacation right now, I'm **up to my ears** in work.
- Sorry guys, I can't come out this evening. I'm **up to my ears** in homework.

## Whet someone's appetite

*if something whets your appetite for a specific thing, it makes you want it. It creates the desire and the interest in you.*

- The first chapter of that book really **whetted my appetite**. I'm looking forward to reading more of it tonight.
- I can only hope I've **whet your appetite** to go out and see and learn more.

## Your heart isn't in something

*if your heart isn't in something you are doing, you are not passionate about it. You are not very interested in it*

- She was a good teacher, popular with her students, but **her heart wasn't in it**.

Involvement and interest



## Exercise 1

Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.

1. Come to our arts and crafts evening and try your \_\_\_\_ at something different.  
a) nose                      b) heart                      c) hand
2. Don't stick your \_\_\_\_ into matters that don't concern you.  
a) ears                      b) nose                      c) hand
3. Everyone stayed late yesterday – we're up to our \_\_\_\_ in work at the office.  
a) hearts                      b) ears                      c) noses
4. The rebuilding of the old factory was a real labor of \_\_\_\_.  
a) love                      b) heart                      c) business
5. The new committee at the sports club are making lots of changes and they really mean \_\_\_\_!  
a) heart                      b) labor                      c) business
6. We believe that the judge is fair and has no \_\_\_\_ to grind.  
a) ax                      b) bandwagon                      c) appetite

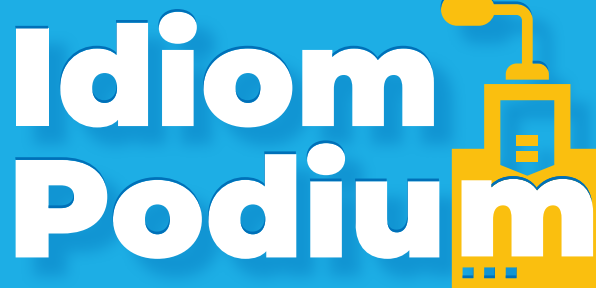
## Exercise 2

Match sentence halves 1–6 with A–F to make complete sentences.

12

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. It looks as though more and more companies...          | A. ...wasn't in the picture at all.          |
| 2. I knew Karate and had...                               | B. ...my heart wasn't in it.                 |
| 3. I congratulated the winners but...                     | C. ...the ability to steer clear of danger.  |
| 4. I never wanted to be famous and I like...              | D. ...will soon be jumping on the bandwagon. |
| 5. He has decided that art history...                     | E. ...to keep a low profile.                 |
| 6. He spoke as if I had nothing to do with it, as if I... | F. ...is not his cup of tea.                 |

12



Decide if the following sentences are true (✓) or false (×).

- ## Exercise 4

12

- 48

12





## The Answer

### Exercise 1

1. **c**
2. **b**
3. **b**
4. **a**
5. **c**
6. **a**

### Exercise 2

1. **D**
2. **C**
3. **B**
4. **E**
5. **F**
6. **A**

### Exercise 3

1. **true**
2. **false**
3. **false**
4. **true**
5. **true**
6. **false**

### Exercise 4

1. **b**
2. **a**
3. **a**
4. **b**
5. **a**
6. **b**



## Sip - 1



Hello world, thank you so much for tuning in. This is your host Ibrahim accompanied by my angry buddy, Joe.

مرحبًا بالجميع ، شكرًا جزيلاً على المتابعة. هذا هو مضيفكم إبراهيم برفقة صديقي الغاضب ، جو.

Ugh, this again...

آه - هذا مرة أخرى (انت بردو ثاني؟)



Oh c'mon, it's not like you got somewhere else to be. Plus they really like seeing you get "roasted".

بريك (ما خلاص بقى) - ليس الامر وكأنه لديك مكان اخر تذهب اليه - بالاضافة - انهم يحبون رؤيتك وانت تهان.



Alright alright. In today's episode I'll answer a bunch of your questions rapid-fire style.

حسنًا حسنًا. في حلقة اليوم سأجيب على مجموعة من أسئلتكم بأسلوب إطلاق النار السريع.



First question says: can you recommend some English must-read books?

السؤال الأول يقول: هل يمكنك أن توصي ببعض الكتب الإنجليزية التي يجب قراءتها؟



Well...yes, yes I can. Next question says...

حسنًا... نعم - نعم يمكنني - السؤال التالي يقول...

What the frog?

ماذا بحق اللعنة؟



Joe, I was just kidding, wasn't it obvious?

جو - كنت امزح - الم يكن هذا واضحًا؟

Just answer the darn question, will you?

فقط اجب عن السؤال اللعين، هلا فعلت؟





Aight, cool. Let's see.

حسنًا، رائع - لنرى.



I really like 1984 by George Orwell. It explains a lot of what the world is going through right now.

انا حقا احب كتاب 1984 ل جورج اوريل - انه يشرح الكثير مما يمر به العالم الان.



You can also try. The art of war by SunZi. What a brilliant book!

يمكنك ايضا تجربة (فن الحرب) ل سن تزي - ياله من كتاب رائع.



And if you would like to examine the western notion of what a woman is and how women are treated, I recommend, "The second sex" by Simone de Beauvoir.

واذا كنت تحب ان تفحص المفهوم الغربي عن كينونة المرأة وكيف يتم معاملتها. انا انصحك بكتاب (الجنس الثاني) ل سيمون دي بوفوار.



Currently, I'm reading a book about anti-gravity, it's impossible to put down...

حاليا، انا اقرأ كتاب عن مضادات الجاذبية، انه من المستحيل ان اضعه.

Are you serious?

هل انت جاد؟



Well, yes, Joe. That's how anti-gravity works.

نعم يا جو. هذه طريقة عمل مضادات الجاذبية.

Hahaha, you're so funny. You almost gave me a heart attack.

هاهاها - انت مضحك. كنت على وشك ان تصيبني بازمة قلبية.



Happy to oblige 😊. Do you believe in gravity, Joe?

سعيد لخدمتك 😊. هل تؤمن بالجاذبية يا جو؟



I don't wanna talk about it. Just get this over with. I ain't in no mood to discuss Gravity, flat earth, crypto currency, anti-christ or any of what people like you waste their time arguing about.

لا اريد الحديث عنها. فقط انتهي من هذا الامر. لن اناقش الجاذبية. سطحية الارض، العملات الرقمية، المسيح الدجال ولا اي من ذلك.



Cheese and rice, somebody woke up on the wrong side of the bed!  
يا إلهي - شخص ما استيقظ على الجانب الخاطئ من السرير.

Whatever, man. I'm tired of being here although I'm the star of the show. Let's just call it a day.

ماعلينا يا اخي - انا سئمت من وجودي هنا بالرغم من اني نجم العرض - دعنا ننهي الامر



Well, I don't think you're the star of the show, Joe. You are merely the result of my creation.

حسنا، لا اظن انك نجم العرض يا جو - انت مجرد نتيجة لما صنعت.



The idea of you was conceived in a coffee shop while I was waiting for a friend.

ولدت فكرتك في مقهى اثناء انتظاري لاصدقاء.



But I like you Joe, I really do. And before we end this episode, is it ok to tell them what the next episode will be about?

ولكني احبك يا جو - حقا - وقبل ان ننهي الحلقة، هل من الممكن ان نخبرهم عن موضوع الحلقة القادمة؟

Why on earth would you do that? Are you a big fan of Tom Holland?

لماذا يعني قد تفعل ذلك؟ هل انت من محبين "توم هولاند"؟



Tom Holland! The Spider Man guy? Why would I be... What's that got to do with... oh, I get it. Because he is such a spoiler, eh?

توم هولاند؟ الفتى الذي لعب دور الرجل العنكبوت؟ لماذا قد اكون... ما علاقة هذا ب...  
اه - فهمت هذا لانه مفشي للاسرار - اليس كذلك؟



You came up with that on your own?

توصلت الى هذا بنفسك؟



Yup, I believe I did. So, regarding telling them about the next episode, that's definitely a no-go?

نعم. ان اني فعلت. اذن بالنسبة الى اخبارهم عن الحلقة القادمة. بالتأكيد ليس لدينا الاذن؟

Did I stutter?

كل كنت اتهته؟



You know I can just smash you, right? You'd better behave little buddy. Check yourself.

انت تعلم انه يمكنني ان احطمك, اليس كذلك؟ يستحسن ان تحسن سلوكك - تحكم بنفسك.

You can smash me alright, but you ain't gonna find no replacement for me. There's no one better, there's no one greater.

يمكنك تحطيمي بالفعل, ولكن لن تجد من يحل مكاني. لا يوجد شخص افضل ولا يوجد شخص اعظم.



Are you doing a black voice? Alright, next episode guys will be... Ouch, son of a gun that's hot.

هل تقلد الصوت الافريقي؟ حسنا - الحلقة التالية يا رفاق ستكون... اه - يابن ال... هذا ساخن.

Joe rules, so long suckers.

چو يتحكم. اراكم لاحقا أيها الساذج.





## Blip - 1

### Roast = Bake = Grill

If you roast somebody, you insult them in a funny way

إذا كنت تشوي شخصًا ما، فإنك تهينه بطريقة مضحكة

- **Roasted** chicken.

دجاج مشوي.

- There's a difference in taste between medium and dark **roast** coffee.

هناك فرق في المذاق بين القهوة المحمصة المتوسطة والداكنة.

### (Rapid / Quick) fire

طلقات سريعة (يتكلم بسرعة مثل سرعة طلقات الرشاش)

### What the frog? = What the f\*\*k

للتعبير عن الاستغراب ولكن بطريقة مهذبة

### Cheese and rice = Jesus Christ

للتعبير عن الاستغراب

### To wake up on the wrong side of the bed!

ان تستيقظ من النوم ومزاجك متعكر

### Did I stutter?

هل أتلعثم؟ (أسلوب فظ وخشن يقال لشخص لا يفهم كلامك المبسط)



**Sucker = gullible**

ساذج

**So long suckers = Good bye suckers**

تستخدم للمحبة والود بين الأصدقاء والمعارف (للسخرية)  
أو تستخدم للخداع (استخدام غير وقح)

- **So long suckers.**

مع السلامة يا مغفلين.

- **So long suckers.**

مع السلامة يا ساذجين (ضحكت عليكموا).

**Call it a day**

**To stop doing something**  
للتوقف عن فعل شيء ما

- A: I am bored of work.

اشعر بالملل من العمل.

B: Let's **call it a day.**

يكفي العمل اليوم (كفاية شغل لحد كده النهارده بقى).





### Sip

Hello dear viewers, welcome to the second episode of your show, Coffee break.

This is your host Ibrahim accompanied by my angry buddy, Joe.

أعزائي المشاهدين، أهلاً ومرحباً بكم في الحلقة الثانية من برنامجكم "كوفي بريك". هذا هو مضيفكم إبراهيم برفقة صديقي الغاضب جو.



Here we go again!

ها نحن مره أخرى!

C'mon little joe, you cannot always be at rage like this, I'm just trying to raise the curtain!

لا يمكنك أن تكون غاضب هكذا طول الوقت عزيزي جو، أنا أحاول فقط أن أبدأ!



Beans!

جنون!



I'm waiting for you to end this hassle so I can pour myself on something I care more about.

أنا منتظر أن تُنهي هذه الضوضاء حتى (أسكب) نفسي في شيء أهتم به أكثر.

You are such a funny character, Joe!

يالك من شخصية مضحكة يا جو!



Well, look, why don't we try to take a "coffee break" today and have a friendly conversation.

حسناً، ما رأيك أن نأخذ "استراحة قهوة" نشرب قهوة! ونتحدث بشكل ودي!



Only if I take the lead.

في حالة أنني أمسك زمام الأمر فقط!





It's best to ignore that. Tell me, what do you think the world is eager to know about in our show? What are they curious about?

من الأفضل تجاهل ذلك. اخبرني، في اعتقادك ماذا سيكون مثير للناس معرفته في برنامجنا؟ ما الفضول الذي لديهم؟



Me. I thought it was obvious.

أنا طبعا! اعتقدت أنه واضح!

Back to square one.

رجعت ربما لعادتها القديمة! رجعنا زي الأول تاني!



Huh, well let's move on!

هاه، دعنا نكمل!

Okay why don't we just talk about Joe's interesting life? I bet you have some exciting stories to tell.. Oh sorry to tell!

حسننا لم لا نتحدث عن حياة جو المثيرة؟ أراهن أن لديك قصص مشوقة تحكيها لنا!



Extra funny!

مضحك جدا!

Well guys, Joe will tell you about...

حسننا مشاهدينا، جو سوف يخبركم...



What the heck! I won't utter a word!

اللعنه! لن أتفوه بكلمه!

Oh, cool down man!

أوه! إهدأ يا رجل!





Okay, wouldn't it be nice if we asked them to cast their opinions and aspirations?

سيكون لطيفا إذا تركنا المشاهدين يطلعونا على آرائهم وطموحاتهم!



Freaking yes!

بالتأكيد!



I bet they would love to talk more about space, maybe they will go there one day and enjoy silence without your sweet voice!

أعتقد أنهم سيحبون الحديث عن الفضاء لعلهم يذهبون هناك بعيدا عن صوتك الجميل يوما من الأيام!

Take it easy! Without my sweet voice you would've never been known, buddy!

بربك! لا تخرجني عن شعوري! من غير صوتي الجميل لم يكن ليعرفك أحد!



Whoa!

توقف!



Cheese and rice, you get angrier by the hour!

يا للهول، غضبك يزيد كل ساعة!



Common Joe let's make a deal. I'll ask you a bunch of questions and you answer as fast as you can!

بربك يا جو، هيا بنا ن عقد اتفاقا. سوف أسألك مجموعة من الأسئلة وتجاوب علي بأسرع ما يمكنك.





Tell me something you practice doing lately.

قل لي شيئاً تتدرب على فعله مؤخراً.



Having some patience to endure your show!

التحلي ببعض الصبر لتحمل برنامجك!

Something you don't want to do?

شيء لا تود فعله؟



Showing up to your show.

المجيء إلى برنامجك.

It would be a great loss man, wouldn't it?

سوف تكون خسارة كبيرة يا رجل أليس كذلك؟



What's your favourite color?

ما هو لونك المفضل؟



"blaaack coffee."

أغنية "القهوة السوداء".

So tell me about the useful things you have in your daily routine.

حسنًا قل لي عن الأشياء المفيدة التي تفعلها في روتينك اليومي.



I wonder about the universe (in a dreamy voice).

أنا أتساءل عن الكون (بصوت حالم).



Oh man, how deep is that! What an answer!

أوه يا رجل، كم هذا عميق! يالها من إجابة!



Whatever! Like current challenges the universe suffers from - like - you know - nowadays pandemic.

أيا يكن! مثل التحديات الحالية التي يعاني منها العالم كوباء اليوم.

Interesting ...Is the glass half empty or half full?

مثير... هل أنت متشائم أم متفائل؟



There is a positive side like people are able to communicate, read, do interesting stuff, learn a new language and know more about their bodies and their immune systems.

هناك جانب إيجابي، أن الناس استطاعوا أن يتواصلوا مع بعضهم البعض و يقرأوا ويفعلوا أشياء مثيرة ويتعلموا لغة جديدة ويعرفون أكثر عن أجسامهم والجهاز المناعي لديهم.

And the negative?

وماذا عن الجانب السلبي؟



That they have more time to watch your show!

أصبح لديهم وقت أكثر لمشاهدة برنامجك!

Ha ha ha. Hilarious!

مضحك جدا!





Alright guys as you see, Joe insists on keeping up the funny spirit. Till we meet again your thoughts are more than welcome. You can always share with us.

What would you like to see in our show, between me and Joe? Huh, it rhymes. And as Joe drinks his lemonade, interesting episodes are being cooked up. Stay tuned!



حسنًا حسنًا مشاهدونا الكرام، كما ترون يصر جو على الإبقاء على روحه المرحه جدا! حتى نتقابل مرة أخرى دائما نرحب بأفكاركم، تستطيعون دائما مشاركتنا، ماذا تحبون أن تروا في برنامجنا بيني وبين جو؟ هاه إنه مثل السجج.

وبينما جو يشرب عصير الليمون ليهدأ قليلا، تُعد حلقات مثيرة لكم، ابقوا معنا!



Au revoir!

مع السلامة (لغة فرنسية)!

In the mood for French, ha? Alright, fine by me.  
Merci beaucoup, Au revoir



في المزاج لتحدث الفرنسية، صحيح؟ حسنًا - لا مشكلة لدي.  
شكرا جزيلا، الى اللقاء.





### Blip

#### Raise the curtain

ابدأ

#### Full of beans = so energetic

- We were young and full of **beans**.

كنا صغار ومليئين بالطاقة.

#### Not have a bean

it means that someone has little or no money

- When we married we **hadn't a bean** so we bought all our furniture second-hand.

عندما تزوجنا لم يكن لدينا مال، لذلك اشترينا أثاثا مستعملا.

#### Spill the beans

للإخبار عن سر ما

- Common! **Spill the beans!**

#### Beans = nonsense / foolishness

شيء ليس له معنى

#### Pour on

يصب

- Pour** some water **on** my cup please!

اسكب بعض الماء في كوبي من فضلك.



## Pour on = spend / money / time / energy

- He is **pouring** all his time **on** the project.

## Back to square one

بدء شيء من البداية مرة أخرى

## Is the glass half empty or half full

تعبير بقيس رؤية الإنسان للحياة بشكل عام

## Rhymes

كلمات لها نفس القافية، الوزن أو اللحن

- Cat
- Sat
- Bat
- Joe and show

## Cooked up

it seems that you are very hungry

- I will **cook** something **up** for you.

= making up/inventing/preparing

- Joe is **cooking up** a story.

جو يطبخ قصة.





## Sip



Hello, welcome to the third episode of your show, Coffee break.  
This is your host Ibrahim accompanied by my always angry buddy, Joe.  
أهلاً ومرحباً بكم في الحلقة الثانية من برنامجكم "كوفي بريك". هذا هو مضيفكم إبراهيم برفقة صديقي الغاضب دائماً، جو.



The coffee cup that is supposed to wake us up is catching some z's, what an irony!  
كوب القهوة الذي من المفترض أن يوقظنا نائم، يالها من مفارقة.



Hello Joe! I sound like Donald Trump, don't I? Hello Joe! He's out like a light!  
مرحباً، جو! أتحدث مثل دونالد ترامب، اليس كذلك؟ مرحباً، جو. إنه في سبات عميق!

ww where am I?  
أأ أين أنا؟



Relax, Joe, we didn't kidnap you. You are in your favourite show, Coffee break.  
اهداً يا جو لم نقم باختطافك! أنت في برنامجك المفضل "كوفي بريك".

Don't mess with me!  
لا تغضبني!



C'mon Joe, let us start, we have an interesting topic today, I'm sure you gonna love it.  
بربك يا جو دعنا نبدأ، لدينا موضوع شيق اليوم، أنا متأكد أنه سيعجبك.



Today we are going to talk about the benefits of speaking more than one language.  
اليوم سنتحدث عن فوائد التحدث بأكثر من لغة.





Ah... it's my cup of tea.

اه... انه أمر ممتع بالنسبة لي



You mean, a piece of cake?

هل تقصد أنه سهل؟

It doesn't really matter.

لا يهم حقا.



Are you multilingual?

هل أنت متعدد اللغات؟

Yes, I am multilingual. Why are you surprised?

نعم، أنا متعدد اللغات. لماذا انت متفاجئ؟



Are you for real?

هل أنت جاد؟

Yes. I can only speak English.

نعم أستطيع أن أتحدث الإنجليزية فقط.



I'm afraid you're getting it wrong, Joe.

أعتقد أنك تسيء فهم هذا يا جو.

For your knowledge, the person who speaks one language is called monolingual.

لعلكم، الشخص الذي يتحدث لغة واحدة يسمى "متحدث لغة واحدة".

Two?

أثنين؟





Bilingual.

شخص يتحدث لغتين.

And three?

وثلاثة؟



Trilingual.

شخص يتحدث ثلاثة لغات.



Anyhow Joe, do you think that speaking more than one language would bear much fruit?

على أي حال يا جو، هل تعتقد أن تعلم أكثر من لغة من الممكن أن تؤتي ثمارها؟

None of my concern.

لا يهمني.



Whatever, studies have shown that being bilingual can be very beneficial to the brain to the extent that it can reduce stroke!

أيا يكن، أظهرت بعض الدراسات أن تكلم أكثر من لغة يمكن أن يكون مفيد لدمغ الإنسان إلى حد أنه ممكن أن يقلل من احتمال الإصابة بالسكتة الدماغية!

Irrelevant! Why would I care?

لا أهمية لذلك بالنسبالي! لماذا أهتم؟



Concerning health benefits, there are some suggestions that bilingualism can delay the onset of Dementia and Alzheimer's disease.

وفيما يخص الفوائد الصحية، هناك بعض الاقتراحات أن ثنائية اللغة من الممكن أن تؤخر الإصابة بالتدهور العقلي ومرض ألزهايمر.

Well... what does this have to do with me?

حسنًا... ما شأن هذا بي؟





Not just that... but actually knowing more than one language can open up great opportunities for you generally and career wise as well.

ليس هذا فقط ولكن في الواقع معرفة أكثر من لغة من الممكن أن يفتح العديد من الفرص أمامك بشكل عام، وفي تحسين المسار الوظيفي أيضا.

My career is doomed being here with you.

مهنتي محكوم عليها بالفشل كوني أتواجد معك هنا.



Talk to the hand. Speaking more than one language can broaden your mind, make it easier for you if you wanna travel. It can also make you knowledgeable and have access to other cultures. You actually can dive into new worlds!

تحدث الى يدي. تحدث اكثر من لغة من الممكن أن توسع آفاق عقلك. تستطيع أيضا أن تجعلك واسع المعرفة، ولديك مدخل للثقافات الأخرى. تستطيع حقا أن تغوص في عوالم أخرى!

I'm a cup I cannot dive, Huh.

أنا مجرد كوب لا أستطيع الغوص، ها.



Metaphorically speaking, Joe. Don't you use metaphors!

There is a quote that says : to have another language is to possess a second soul.

مجازيا يا جو! لا تستخدم المجاز!

هناك اقتباس يقول أن يكن لديك لغة ثانية مثلما يكن لديك روح ثانية.

Whoever said that is as dumb as a bag full of rocks! Oh wait, let me rephrase: Who ever said that is as dumb as you are.

أيا كان من قال هذا، فهو غبي مثل حقيبة مملوءة بالحجارة.  
انتظر - دعني اعيد صياغة هذا، ايا كان من قال ذلك، فهو غبي بنفس درجتك.



If you don't keep your mouth shut and refrain from insult, I'mma have to do something that will make you sorry, you know, the thing you hate the most. I'll have to wash you.

إذا لم تغلق فمك وتمتنع عن الالهانة، سيتوجب علي فعل شيء سيجعلك تتأسف. تعرف، الشيء الذي تكرهه أكثر ممن اي شيء آخر - سيتوجب علي غسلك.



Easy man, I was just joking, can't you take a joke?

على رسلك يا رجل، كنت امزح فقط، أألا تتحمل المزاح؟



Oh, you suddenly came to your senses!

أوه، فجأة عدت الى رشذك!

Being bilingual or at least knowing its benefits can make you pass this experience to your children and help you raise bilingual kids, which would be a great help you offer them in today's world.

عندما تكون شخص متحدث للغتين أو عند معرفتك على الأقل لفوائد هذا يمكنك أن تنقل هذه الخبرة لأطفالك، فتربي أطفالا يستطيعون التحدث بلغتين جيدا، ولعل هذه مساعدة كبيرة تستطيع أن تقدمها لهم في عالمنا الحالي.

What? No funny comments? Wow, you really hate being washed.

ماذا؟ لا تعليق ساخر؟ واو - انت حقا تكره ان تُغسل.

You'll have your day.

سوف يأتي يومك.



In addition to that, it seems like children who are bilingual tend to be more active and achieve better in school in different fields and dimensions.

وبالإضافة لذلك، يتضح أن الأطفال الذين يتحدثون لغتين يكونون أكثر نشاطا ويؤدون أفضل في المدرسة في مجالات وأبعاد مختلفة.

Sorry Joe, a lot of irrelevant information to you today, but I'm sure it will find a wide range of recipients.

عذرا جو، الكثير من المعلومات غير النافعة بالنسبالك اليوم، ولكن أنا متأكد أنه سيجد عددا كبيرا من المتلقين.

It doesn't matter, I will continue sleeping till I find something interesting in your show! I guess I'll be sleeping for ages.

لا يهم، سوف أستمر في النمو حتى أجد شيئا مثيرا في برنامجك! أعتقد أنني سأنام كثيرا!!





But Joee I find today's information useful in your case, because studies have also shown that shifting between languages can help lowering stress levels!

ولكن يا جو أعتقد أن معلومات اليوم مفيدة في حالتك، لأن بعض الدراسات أظهرت أيضا أن التنقل بين لغة وأخرى في الكلام يساعد على تقليل معدلات التوتر والضغط.

Oh well, 나는 떠난다

حسنًا، أنا راحل (بالكورية)



Alright 안녕 내 친구.

Alright dear viewers, I hope today's episode has been effective for you, see you in the next episode inshallah with a topic that Joe doesn't agree on. Thank you for watching.

حسنًا وداعًا يا صديقي (بالكورية) ، حسنًا مشاهدونا الأعزاء، نتمنى أن حلقة اليوم كانت مفيدة لكم، نراكم في الحلقة القادمة إن شاء الله مع موضوع لا يتفق معه جو أيضًا. شكرًا للمشاهدة.



## Analyse

to examine (something)

- We need to **analyse** our results more clearly.

## Analysis

detailed examination (of something)

- The team is doing a careful **analysis** of the problem.
- Your **analysis** seems logical.

## Approach

to come near (someone or something)

- The train is **approaching** its destination.
- The train is **approaching** means it's coming near its destination.
- **Approach** slowly.

## Area

a region or part of a town, a country, or the world

- We can use drones to scan the **area**.
- This is not a parking **area**.

## Assess

to evaluate or estimate the nature, ability, or quality of (something)

- Their property is **assessed** at \$200.000.
- You can **assess** the quality of my work.

## Assessment

the action of assessing someone or something. That's the noun from (assess)

- The faculty is doing a detailed **assessment** of educational needs.

## Assume

suppose to be the case, without proof

- When you **assume** that something is true, you think it's true but you don't have evidence. It's just what you think.
- Don't **assume** my intentions.
- He **assumed** full responsibility for the management of the company.
- Can I **assume** you know who we are?

## Authority

the power or right to give orders or make decisions

- Who gave you the **authority** to do as you wish?
- Lord or not, you have no reason and no **authority** to arrest this man.
- The local **authorities** have yet to find the criminal.

## Available

present or ready for immediate use

- There are tons of **available** resources.

qualified or willing to do something or to assume a responsibility.

- The employer has found 3 available candidates.
- It's **available** to you at all times.

## Benefit

something that produces good or helpful results or effects or that promotes well-being

- They are reaping the **benefits** for their hard work.
- Yes, both our cultures would **benefit**.

## Concept

An abstract idea

- The **concepts** of psychology are sometimes difficult to grasp.
- Sometimes possession is an abstract **concept**.

## Consist

be composed or made up of

- The crew **consists** of four men.

## Consistent

acting or done in the same way over time

- We should have **consistent** results.
- I'm told his product was more or less **consistent**.







## Choose the correct answer

**1-** Part of a place, piece of land or country

- a) Approach
- b) Area
- c) Concept

**2-** Able to be bought, used, or reached

- a) Available
- b) Benefit
- c) Consist

**3-** Principle or idea

- a) Analyse
- b) Approach
- c) Concept

**4-** Comprised or made up of

- a) Assume
- b) Authority
- c) Consist

**5-** A helpful or good effect

- a) Assess
- b) Benefit
- c) Consist

**6-** The legal right to control or make decisions

- a) Approach
- b) Authority
- c) Concept

**7-** To come nearer to something

- a) Approach
- b) Area
- c) Benefit

**8-** Evaluate

- a) Analyse
- b) Assess
- c) Consist

**9-** To study or examine

- a) Assess
- b) Analyse
- c) Assume

**10-** To accept as true without question or proof

- a) Area
- b) Assume
- c) Authority





## Academic Word List

### Analyse

Analysed  
Analysers  
Analysers  
Analyses  
Analysing  
Analysis  
Analyst  
Analysts  
Analytic  
Analytical  
Analytically  
Analyze  
Analyzed  
Analyzes  
Analyzing

### Approach

Approachable  
Approached  
Approaches

Approaching

Unapproachable

### Area

Areas

### Assess

Assessable  
Assessed  
Assesses  
Assessing  
Assessment  
Assessments  
Reassess  
Reassessed  
Reassessing  
Reassessment  
Unassessed

### Assume

Assumed  
Assumes  
Assuming  
Assumption  
Assumptions

### Authority

Authoritative  
Authorities

### Available

Availability  
Unavailable

### Benefit

Beneficial  
Beneficiary  
Beneficiaries  
Benefited  
Benefiting  
Benefits

### Concept

Conception  
Concepts  
Conceptual  
Conceptualisation  
Conceptualise  
Conceptualised  
Conceptualises  
Conceptualising  
Conceptually

### Consist

Consisted  
Consistency  
Consistent  
Consistently  
Consisting  
Consists  
Inconsistencies  
Inconsistency  
Inconsistent

The Answer



1- Area

2- Available

3- Concept

4- Consist

5- Benefit

6- Authority

7- Approach

8- Assess

9- Assess

10- Assume



## Clause

Clause = **subject** + **verb**

- Computers **are** important.

## Phrase

Phrase ≠ **subject** + **verb**

- In many countries around the world...

السentence تتكون من clause واحد أو أكثر من clause.

## 1 Clause

- Computers **are** important.

## 2 Clauses

- Computers **are** important, but **they are** dangerous too.

## 3 Clauses

- Computers **are** important, but **they can be** dangerous too, so **we must be** careful.

## 4 Clauses

- Computers **are** important, but **they can be** dangerous too, so **we must be** careful when **we use** them.

ال phrase هي عبارة لا تحتوي علي **subject** أو **verb**.

- In many countries around the world, **flooding is** becoming more common.

## Sentence Structure:

- |             |   |                     |
|-------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. Simple   | } | 3. Complex          |
| 2. Compound |   | 4. Compound-Complex |

تتكون ال Simple Sentence من One clause فقط، وتحتوي علي **subject** و **verb** أو أكثر.

### 1 Subject + 1 Verb

- **Computers** **are** important in the modern world.

### 2 Subjects + 1 Verb

- **Computers** and **other technological devices** **are** important in the modern world.

### 1 Subject + 2 Verbs

- **I** **search** for information and **play** games on my computer.

### 2 Subjects + 2 Verbs

- **My brother** and **I** **search** for information and **play** games on our computer.



## Choose the correct answer

- 1- I'm going out tonight so I must get ready soon.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

- 2- Global warming is a major problem, but it can be solved if we take action now.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

- 3- Obesity is getting worse now in developing countries.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

- 4- I don't know when I will be able to stop studying because I have many more exams.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

- 5- It's cold outside so I'm going to stay in.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

- 6- Why were you so late?

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

**7-** He said that he will come to see me tomorrow.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

**8-** It is important to be on time, but it is ok to be late when you have an emergency.

- a) 1 clause
- b) 2 clauses
- c) 3 clauses

**9-** In the morning, I was late for work.

- a) Simple sentence with two clauses
- b) Simple sentence with one clause
- c) Simple sentence with two phrases

**10-** In the evening, I eat dinner and watch TV.

- a) Two clauses, two verbs and two subjects.
- b) One clause, two verbs and one subject.
- c) One clause, two verbs and two subjects.

**11-** I went to sleep as soon as I got home.

- a) Simple sentence with two clauses.
- b) Not a simple sentence.
- c) One clause and one phrase.

## The Answer



- 1-** 2 clauses
- 2-** 3 clauses
- 3-** 1 clause
- 4-** 3 clauses
- 5-** 2 clauses
- 6-** 1 clause

- 7-** 2 clauses
- 8-** 3 clauses
- 9-** Simple sentence with one clause
- 10-** One clause, two verbs and two subjects.
- 11-** Not a simple sentence.

### Constitute

make up, form or compose (something)

- High school dropouts **constitute** a major problem in large city slums.

### Constituted

could also mean: set up, establish or give legal form to something

- Recent regulations in response to COVID-19 are **constituted** by the government.
- We **constitute** the frontline.

### Constitution

The system according to which a nation or a country is governed

- In 1872, an entirely new **constitution** was adopted.
- The **constitution** was adopted

### Constitutional

relating to the constitution.

- I would like my clients to be able to exercise their **constitutional** rights.
- But I wield **constitutional** authority.

### Context

the circumstances that form the setting for an event, statement, or idea, and in terms of which it can be fully understood.

- Skilled readers use **context** to construct meaning from words as they are read
- I take their stories and place them in a larger **context**.

## Contract

a written or spoken agreement

- If he breaks the **contract**, he'll be sued.
- We had a **contract**.

## Create

to bring into existence

- God **created** heaven and earth.

to cause or produce (something)

- The young artist **created** a painting.
- Secrets **create** barriers between people.

## Data

facts and statistics collected together for reference or analysis

- Comprehensive **data** on economic growth have been published
- I have insufficient **data** to proceed.

## Define

to determine or identify the essential qualities or meaning of (something or word)

- The issues are not yet **defined**.
- Our beliefs **define** us.



## Definition

a statement of the exact meaning of a word, especially in a dictionary

- I couldn't find the dictionary **definition** of the verb.

## Derive

obtain, deduce or trace something to/from (a specified source)

- We can **derive** the word "chauffeur" from French.

base a concept on an extension or modification of another concept

- You can't **derive** your self-worth from the opinions of others.

## Distribute

to divide among several or many (recipients)

- The charity **distributes** toys to needy children.
- Just focus on your balance, Then **distribute** your weight evenly.

## Economy

the state of a country or region in terms of the production and consumption of goods and services and the supply of money

- The government favours tax cuts to stimulate the **economy**.
- Solid **economy** needs hand workers.



## Economic

relating to, or based on the production, distribution, and consumption of goods and services

- The region has seen rapid **economic** growth over the past 5 years.

## Environment

the circumstances, objects, or conditions by which one is surrounded

- Survival in a hostile **environment** requires a particular set of skills.
- No, I like to save the **environment** my own way.



## Choose the correct answer

1- The air, water and land in or on which people, animals and plants live

- a) Constitute
- b) Context
- c) Environment

2- To form or make up something

- a) Constitute
- b) Create
- c) Derive

3- Information, especially facts or numbers

- a) Contract
- b) Data
- c) Define

4- The system of trade and industry by which the wealth of a country is made and used

- a) Constitution
- b) Economy
- c) Environment

5- To say what the meaning of something, especially a word, is

- a) Context
- b) Derive
- c) Define

6- To make something new, or invent something

- a) Create
- b) Distribute
- c) Derive

7- To get something from something else

- a) Context
- b) Derive
- c) Distribute

8- The situation within which something exists or happens, and that can help explain it

- a) Context
- b) Economy
- c) Define

9- A legal document that states and explains a formal agreement

- a) Constitutional
- b) Contract
- c) Environment

10- To give something out to several people, or to spread or supply something

- a) Distribute
- b) Economy
- c) Environment

### The Answer



1- Environment

2- Constitute

3- Data

4- Economy

5- Define

6- Create

7- Derive

8- Context

9- Contract

10- Distribute



النوع الثاني من الجمل وهو ال **Compound Sentences** أي الجملة المركبة، وهذه الجمل تكون متصلة ببعضها عن طريق ال **Coordinating Conjunctions** أي حروف العطف.

**Coordinating Conjunctions** تستخدم لربط جزئين بنفس القيمة، وهذه الحروف هي:

(For / And / Not / But / Or / Yet / So)

ونختصرهم في كلمة **FANBOYS**.

"نفس القيمة" تعني أننا نستخدمهم للربط بين:

#### Words with words

- Ahmed **and** Mohamed are brothers.

#### Phrases with phrases

- You can eat oatmeal in the morning **or** in the evening.

#### Clauses with clauses

- Computers are important, **but** they can be dangerous.

#### Sentences with sentences

- I don't want to throw away my candy bars, **nor** do I wish to listen to my doctor. **But** I adore candy bar factories. **And** I want to own one someday.

**So** تستخدم بمعنى "لذلك" عندما يكون هناك سبب ونتيجة في الجملة.

- I don't have enough cash, **so** I will not buy the jacket.

**Yet** تستخدم بمعنى "بالرغم من".

- Her advice seems strange, **yet** I believe she's right.

**Nor** تستخدم بمعنى "ولا" مع العلم إنه يجب أن يكون هناك نفي في الجملة.

- They don't own a dog, **nor** do they own a cat.

**For** تستخدم بمعنى "لأن".

- Tim drank some water, **for** he was thirsty.

يمكن ان نبدأ الجملة بـ **Coordinating Conjunction**.

- I don't want to throw away my candy bars, **nor** do I wish to listen to my doctor. **But** I adore candy bar factories. **And** I want to own one someday.

حاول أن تتفادى استخدام **clauses** بشكل متكرر في الجمل لأن كلما زاد عدد **clauses**، زاد معها نسبة الوقوع في الأخطاء.

تجنب تكرار استخدام نفس حرف العطف أكثر من مرة واحدة في الجملة، لأنها تعتبر جملة غير صحيحة.

- Computers are used widely in most countries now, **and** they are a sign of progress, **and** we must ensure everyone's has access to them. ❌
- **Computers are used** widely in most countries now, **and they are** a sign of progress, **so** must ensure **everyone's has** access to them.
- **Computers are used** widely in most countries now, **and they are** a sign of progress. **We** must ensure **everyone's has** access to them.

لاحظ أن الجملة الأولى حرف العطف "**and**" مكرر، إذا فهي جملة غير صحيحة.

والجملة الثانية قمنا بتغيير أداة العطف الثانية "**and**" بـ "**so**"، ولاحظ إنها مكونة من **Three Clauses**، إذا فهي جملة صحيحة.

أما الجملة الثالثة فقمنا بتقسيمها إلى جملتين، الأولى مكونة من **Two Clauses** مربوطتين بحرف العطف "**and**" والثانية مكونة من **clause** واحد فقط، إذا أول جملة تكون **Simple Sentence** والثانية **Compound Sentence**.



Choose the correct answer

- 1- We listened eagerly, \_\_\_\_\_ he brought news of our families.  
a) But  
b) So  
c) For
- 2- Kelly was a convicted criminal, \_\_\_\_\_ many people admired him.  
a) So  
b) And  
c) Yet
- 3- I was feeling hungry, \_\_\_\_\_ I made myself a sandwich.  
a) Yet  
b) So  
c) Nor
- 4- I don't expect children to be rude, \_\_\_\_\_ do I expect to be disobeyed.  
a) Nor  
b) For  
c) But
- 5- She didn't speak to anyone, \_\_\_\_\_ nobody spoke to her.  
a) Nor  
b) But  
c) And
- 6- They rushed to the hospital, \_\_\_\_\_ they were too late.  
a) But  
b) And  
c) For
- 7- You can go shopping, \_\_\_\_\_ you can go camping.  
a) And  
b) Or  
c) So
- 8- I take milk \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in my tea.  
a) Nor  
b) But  
c) And
- 9- He's sick, \_\_\_\_\_ he's not going to school.  
a) But  
b) And  
c) So
- 10- Sarah doesn't like apples, \_\_\_\_\_ does she like pears.  
a) Nor  
b) But  
c) And

The Answer



1- for

2- yet

3- so

4- nor

5- and

6- but

7- or

8- and

9- so

10- nor



## Establish

set up on a firm or permanent basis

- The corporation was **established** in 1975.
- We need to **establish** a firm defense.

## Established

successful for a long period of time and widely known

- The **established** artist started his journey when he was 14 years old.

## Estimate <sup>(v)</sup>

roughly calculate or judge the value, number, quantity, or extent of.

## Estimate <sup>(n)</sup>

a rough or approximate calculation

- I'm trying to **estimate** it's value.
- The number of patients is **estimated** at 2 Million.
- I **estimate** we only have 38 minutes.

## Evident

clearly seen or understood; obvious

- His guilt was **evident**.
- Then it became **evident** that it might be possible.



## Evidence

the available facts or information indicating whether a belief or proposition is true or valid

- There was no **evidence** to prove his innocence.
- You have no **evidence** to support your claim.

## Export

send (goods or services) to another place (ex. country) for sale

- Nearly all the rice produced was **exported** to Europe.
- I will not tolerate any further damage to our **export** operations.

## Factor

a circumstance, fact, or influence that contributes to a result

- His skill was a **factor** in his employment.
- That might be a **factor**.

## Finance

the management of large amounts of money, especially by governments or large companies

- The company's **finance** department has 12 members.
- You're a man of **finance** and politics.

## Financial

relating to finance

- He hired an independent **financial** advisor.
- Well, this has been the biggest **financial** disaster of my career.

## Formula

a list of ingredients with which something is made

a standard or accepted way of doing or making something (ex. mathematical rule)

- The **formula** for coke was a secret for a long time.
- May I see the **formula**?

## Function <sup>(n)</sup>

an activity that is natural to or the purpose of a person or thing (purpose)

## Function <sup>(v)</sup>

to carry on a function or be in action (Operate)

- Bridges perform the **function** of providing access across water.
- These pills will help your kidneys **function** a little better, sister

## Identify

indicate who or what (someone or something) is

- The police couldn't **identify** the criminal.
- Are you confident that you can **identify** the people that want to harm me?

## Income

money received, especially on a regular basis, for work or through investments

- They have an **income** of \$50,000 a year.
- And it saves us over a trillion dollars without a single penny of taxpayer **income**.



Choose the correct answer

- 1- to start a company or organization that will continue for a long time / to discover or get proof of something
  - a) Establish
  - b) Estimate
  - c) Factor
- 2- to send goods to another country for sale
  - a) Finance
  - b) Function
  - c) Export
- 3- a standard or accepted way of doing or making something / mathematical rule
  - a) Estimate
  - b) Factor
  - c) Formula
- 4- money that is earned from doing work or received from investments
  - a) Finance
  - b) Income
  - c) Function
- 5- easily seen or understood; obvious
  - a) Evident
  - b) Identify
  - c) Analyse
- 6- a fact or situation which influences the result of something
  - a) Estimate
  - b) Factor
  - c) Formula

7- purpose

- a) Function
- b) Identify
- c) Income

8- to guess the cost, size, value, etc. of something

- a) Formula
- b) Income
- c) Estimate

9- to recognize someone or something and say or prove who or what they are

- a) Establish
- b) Formula
- c) Identify

10- the monetary resources and affairs of a state, organization, or person / to provide funding for a person or organisation.

- a) Export
- b) Finance
- c) Formula



Academic Word List

**Establish**

Disestablish  
Disestablished  
Disestablishes  
Disestablishing  
Disestablishment  
Established  
Establishes

Establishing

Establishment  
Establishments

**Estimate**

Estimated  
Estimates  
Estimating  
Estimation

Estimations

Over-estimate  
Overestimate  
Overestimated  
Overestimates  
Overestimating  
Underestimate  
Underestimated

Underestimates

underestimating

**Evident**

Evidenced  
Evidence  
Evidential  
Evidently

## Export

Exported  
Exporter  
Exporters  
Exporting  
Exports

## Factor

Factored  
Factoring  
Factors

## Finance

Financed

Finances

Financial  
Financially  
Financier  
Financiers  
Financing

## Formula

Formulae  
Formulas  
Formulate  
Formulated  
Formulating

Formulation

Formulations  
Reformulate  
Reformulated  
Reformulating  
Reformulation  
Reformulations  
Function  
Functional  
Functionally  
Functioned  
Functioning  
Functions

## Identify

Identifiable  
Identification  
Identified  
Identifies  
Identifying  
Identities  
Identity  
Unidentifiable

## Income

Incomes

## The Answer



- 1- Establish
- 2- Export
- 3- Formula
- 4- Income
- 5- Evident

- 6- Factor
- 7- Function
- 8- Estimate
- 9- Identify
- 10- Finance



**Complex Sentences** تتكون من **Two Clauses** أو أكثر، ولكن المقاطع بها تكون مربوطة ببعضها عن طريق الـ **Subordinating Conjunctions** وهي تشبه أدوات الربط في اللغة العربية.

Unless	If	As long as	While
Even if	As	Where	So that
After	Whenever	Once	As though
Until	In order to	As much as	That
Even though	As if	Wherever	Because
Although	Whereas	Since	Though
When	In case	As soon as	Before

- I went to bed **as soon as** he left **because** I was tired.
- Our children may not be properly educated **if** we don't spend more on schools.

## Usage

### To show time

**After / When / Before / While / Until**  
**As soon as**

- I always eat **before** I go to bed.

### To show place

**If / Unless**

- You can't go home, **unless** it's an emergency.

### To show cause, reason or effect

**Because / Since / So that**

- I only drank that much water **because** I was thirsty.

### To show condition

**Where / Wherever**

- He never eats **where** he sleeps.

يمكن ان نبدأ الجملة بـ **Subordinating Conjunctions**.

- **When** you finish work, let's meet.

**Compound-Complex Sentences** يتكون من **Complex Sentence + Compound or Simple Sentence**.

- I ate alot **when** I got home, **but** I was still hungry.



## Choose the correct answer

- 1- I'm staying in \_\_\_\_\_ it's past curfew.  
a) When  
b) Because  
c) Unless
- 2- Please let me know \_\_\_\_\_ you find out.  
a) Although  
b) As if  
c) If
- 3- You will recognize her \_\_\_\_\_ you see her.  
a) As much as  
b) Now that  
c) When
- 4- He didn't complain at all \_\_\_\_\_ he could keep his job.  
a) Even though  
b) So that  
c) Until
- 5- Did she say anything \_\_\_\_\_ she left?  
a) After  
b) While  
c) Before
- 6- I met them \_\_\_\_\_ we were in Paris.  
a) Where  
b) When  
c) Wherever
- 7- They must turn to the left \_\_\_\_\_ they pass the town.  
a) As soon as  
b) As long as  
c) Because
- 8- They will not pass the math exam \_\_\_\_\_ they work harder.  
a) Because  
b) Unless  
c) If

9- I hate broccoli \_\_\_\_\_ I hate cauliflower.

- a) As long as
- b) Because
- c) As much as

10- You can keep my notebook \_\_\_\_\_ you need it.

- a) As much as
- b) As long as
- c) Unless

### The Answer



- 1- Because
- 2- If
- 3- When
- 4- So that
- 5- Before

- 6- When
- 7- As soon as
- 8- Unless
- 9- As much as
- 10- As long as





## Indicate

to point out or point to something

- The president **indicated** his willingness to use force against the rebels
- The soil samples **indicate** that she's been buried for thirty years.

## Individual

a single person or thing

- His accomplishment was an **individual** effort.
- The desired result is that the **individual** will feel those effects.

## Interpret

to explain or tell the meaning of something

- The evidence is difficult to **interpret**.
- How are we to **interpret** that?

## Interpretation

the action of explaining the meaning of something

- He specializes in the **interpretation** of data.
- They're just an **interpretation**. They're not a record.

## Involve

have or include something or someone as an important part

- Her job **involves** a lot of travelling.
- John, I tried not to **involve** you.

## Issue

an important topic or problem for debate or discussion

- I have **issues** with his behavior
- Immigration was not an **issue** on which we fought.

## Labor

work, especially physical work

- Industry needs **labor** for production
- They need us to work in the factories, in the **labor** camps.

## Legal

relating to the law

- They claimed that it had all been **legal**.
- You're referring to your recent **legal** problems.

## Legislate

to make or enact laws

- They are attempting to **legislate** morality.
- It seems to me an intelligent country would **legislate** a second such gift giving holiday.

## Legislation

laws, considered collectively or the act of enacting laws

- The main function of Congress is **legislation**.
- Our **legislation** favours divorce, but our social customs don't.

## Major

important, serious, or significant

- The use of drugs is a **major** problem.
- That would be a **major** mistake.

## Method

a particular way of doing something

- Their teaching **method** tries to adapt lessons to each student.
- This is why no one can detect his **method**.



## Choose the correct answer

1- A single person or thing

- a) Individual
- b) Involve
- c) Labour

2- A particular way of doing something

- a) Interpret
- b) Labour
- c) Method

3- Laws, considered collectively or the act of enacting laws

- a) Legal
- b) Legislation
- c) Major

4- To explain or tell the meaning of something

- a) Interpret
- b) Indicate
- c) Method

5- A subject or problem which people are thinking and talking about / to produce or provide something official

- a) Legislation
- b) Method
- c) Issue

6- To include someone or something in something

- a) Involve
- b) Indicate
- c) Legal

**7- More important, bigger or more serious**

- a) Interpret
- b) Major
- c) Issue

**8- To point out or point to something**

- a) Indicate
- b) Major
- c) Method

**9- Practical work involving physical effort / workers**

- a) Individual
- b) Involve
- c) Labour

**10-Relating to the law.**

- a) Legal
- b) Legislation
- c) Legislate



## Academic Word List

### Indicate

Indicated  
Indicates  
Indicating  
Indication  
Indications  
Indicative  
Indicator  
Indicators

### Individual

Individualised  
Individuality  
Individualism  
Individualist  
Individualists

Individualistic  
Individually  
Individuals

### Interpret

Interpretation  
Interpretations  
Interpretative  
Interpreted  
Interpreting  
Interpretive  
Interprets  
Misinterpret  
Misinterpretation  
Misinterpretations  
Misinterpreted

### Misinterpreting

Misinterprets  
Reinterpret  
Reinterpreted  
Reinterprets  
Reinterpreting  
Reinterpretation  
Reinterpretations

### Involve

Involved  
Involvement  
Involves  
Involving  
Uninvolved

### Issue

Issued  
Issues  
Issuing

### Labour

Labor  
Labored  
Labors  
Laboured  
Labouring  
Labours

## Legal

Illegal  
Illegality  
Illegally  
Legality  
Legally

## Legislate

Legislated  
Legislates  
Legislating  
Legislation  
Legislative  
Legislator  
Legislators  
Legislature

## Major

Majorities  
Majority

## Method

Methodical  
Methodological  
Methodologies  
Methodology  
Methods

## The Answer



- 1- Individual
- 2- Method
- 3- Legislation
- 4- Interpret
- 5- Issue

- 6- Involve
- 7- Major
- 8- Indicate
- 9- Labour
- 10- Legal



## Occur

happen; take place

- The accident **occurred** at about 3.30 p.m.
- For the first time in twenty-six years, a total solar eclipse will **occur** in the United States.

## Percent

one part in a hundred

- Their sales may be down nineteen **percent** (19%).
- Only about one **percent** of us survived.

## Period

the completion of a cycle, a series of events, or a single action / a length or portion of time

- He had long **periods** of depression.
- It's been a difficult **period**.

## Policy

a course of action adopted or proposed by an organization or individual

- The government has recently adopted questionable economic **policies**.
- You know my **policy**, Gerry.

## Principle

a comprehensive and fundamental law, doctrine, or assumption

- Many people struggle to be true to their own **principles**.
- That's a pretty important **principle** I'd like you to start learning, Nick.

## Proceed

begin a course of action or do something after something else

- The council will **proceed** with their initial plan.
- **Proceed** according to the rule of law.

## Procedure

an established or official way of doing something

- His injury needs a surgical **procedure**.
- We don't have a **procedure** for that, do we?

## Process

a series of actions or steps taken in order to achieve a particular end

- Military operations could jeopardize the peace **process**.
- We've taken the first step in the **process**.

## Require

to demand as necessary or essential

- The occasion **requires** formal dress.
- I will **require** the assistance of two volunteers.

## Research

careful or diligent search or examination

- She conducts **research** into the causes of Alzheimer's disease.
- For **research** purposes, of course.

Respond

say something in reply

- The chairman has **responded** to the criticism.
- Then you also know I don't **respond** well to threats.

Response

a verbal or written answer

- He got a **response** to his letter.



Choose the correct answer

- 1- A basic idea or rule that explains or controls how something happens or works
  - a) Policy
  - b) Principle
  - c) Procedure
- 2- A length of time
  - a) Percent
  - b) Period
  - c) Process
- 3- A series of actions that you take in order to achieve a result
  - a) Procedure
  - b) Process
  - c) Research
- 4- A detailed study of a subject, especially in order to discover (new) information or reach a (new) understanding
  - a) Require
  - b) Research
  - c) Respond



**5- To need or make necessary**

- a) Policy
- b) Principle
- c) Require

**6- To happen (especially of accidents and other unexpected events)**

- a) Occur
- b) Process
- c) Respond

**7- For or out of every 100, shown by the symbol %**

- a) Percent
- b) Period
- c) Research

**8- A set of ideas or a plan of what to do in particular situations that has been agreed officially by a group of people, a business organization, a government or a political party**

- a) Policy
- b) Principle
- c) Procedure

**9- To say or do something as a reaction to something that has been said or done**

- a) Procedure
- b) Require
- c) Respond

**10- A set of actions which is the official or accepted way of doing something**

- a) Policy
- b) Principle
- c) Procedure



## Academic Word List

### Occur

Occurred  
Occurrence  
Occurrences  
Occurring  
Occurs  
Reoccur  
Reoccurred  
Reoccurring  
Reoccurs

### Percent

Percentage  
Percentages

### Period

Periodic  
Periodical  
Periodically  
Periodicals  
Periods

### Policy

Policies

### Principle

Principled  
Principles  
Unprincipled

### Proceed

Procedural  
Procedure

### Procedures

Proceeded  
Proceeding  
Proceedings  
Proceeds

### Process

Processed  
Processes  
Processing

### Require

Required  
Requirement  
Requirements  
Requires  
Requiring

### Research

Researched  
Researcher  
Researchers  
Researches  
Researching

### Respond

Responded  
Respondent  
Respondents  
Responding  
Responds  
Response  
Responses  
Responsive  
Responsiveness  
Unresponsive



The Answer



1- Principle

2- Period

3- Process

4- Research

5- Require

6- Occur

7- Percent

8- Policy

9- Respond

10- Procedure



## Writing

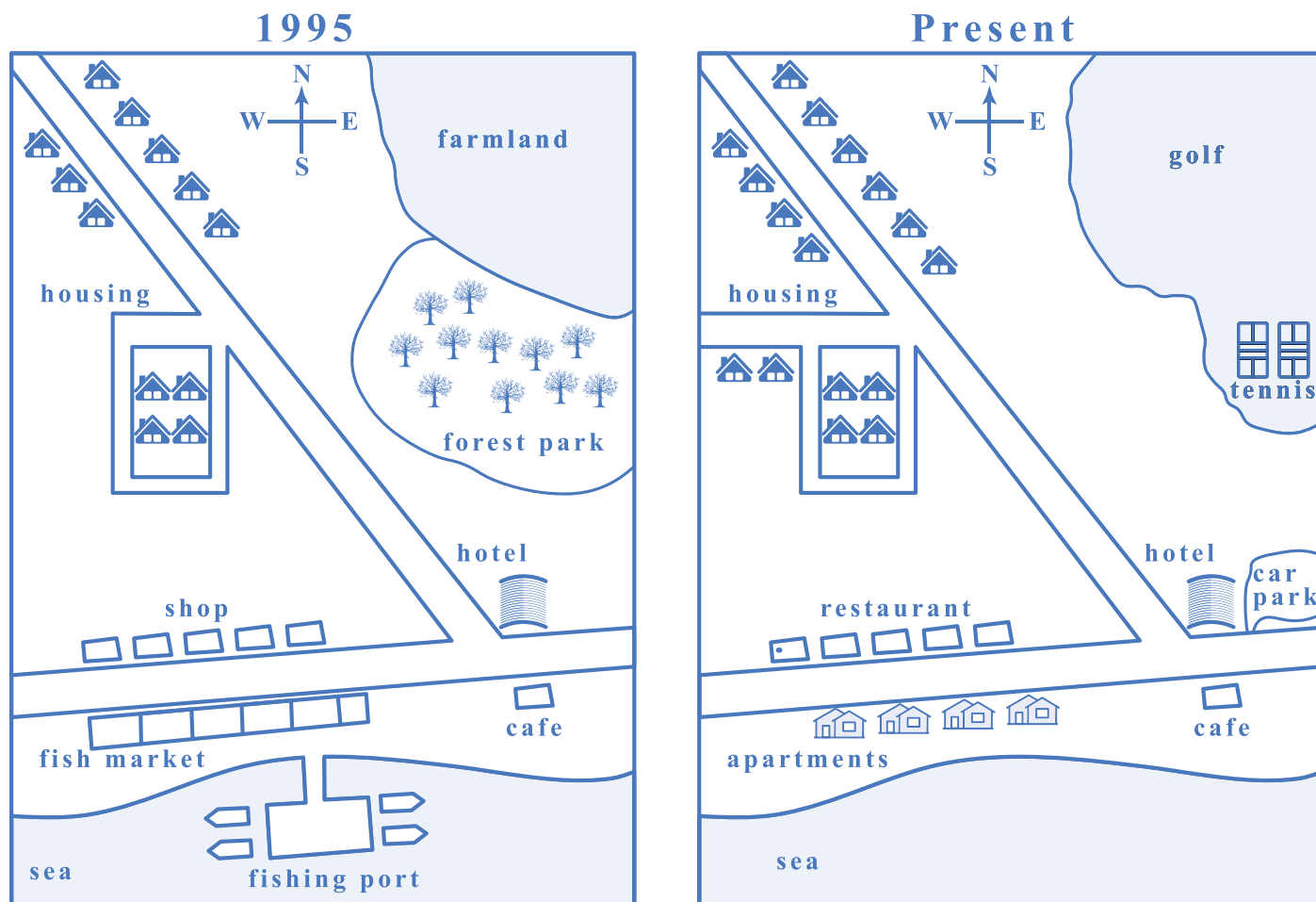
### Academic Writing Task 1

You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The map below shows the development of the village of Ryemouth between 1995 and present.*

*Summarize the information by selecting and reporting the main features and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.



**Listening**

**Questions 1-4**

Complete the notes below:

Write **NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS** for each answer.

**NOTES ON SPORTS CLUB**

Example

Answer

Name of club:

Kingswell

Facilities available:

1 .....

2 .....

Classes available:

3 .....

Additional facility:

4 .....



## Questions 5 - 8

Complete the notes below:

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO NUMBERS** for each answer.

### MEMBERSHIP SCHEMES

Type	Use of facilities	Cost of classes	Times	Joining fee	Annual subscription fee
Gold	All	Free	Any time	£250	5. £....
Silver	All	6. £...	7. From ..... to .....	£225	£300
Bronze	Restricted	£3	From 10:30 to 3:30 weekdays only	£50	8. £....

## Questions 9 and 10

Complete the sentences below:

Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.

9. To join the centre, you need to book an instructor's .....

10. To book a trial session, speak to David ..... (0458 95311).



Reading

## Air Rage

**(A)** The first recorded case of an airline passenger turning seriously violent during a flight, a phenomenon now widely known as "air rage", happened in 1947 on a flight from Havana to Miami. A drunk man assaulted another passenger and bit a flight attendant. However, the man escaped punishment because it was not then clear under whose legal control a crime committed on the plane was, the country where the plane was registered or the country where the crime was committed. In 1963, at the Tokyo convention, it was decided that the laws of the country where the plane is registered take precedence.

**(B)** The frequency of air rage has expanded out of proportion to the growth of air travel. Until recently few statistics were gathered about air rage, but those that have been indicate that passengers are increasingly likely to cause trouble or engage in violent acts. For example, in 1998 there were 266 air rage incidents out of approximately four million passengers, a 400% increase from 1995. In the same period American Airlines showed a 200% rise. Air travel is predicted to rise by 5% internationally by 2010 leading to increased airport congestion. This, coupled with the flying public's increased aggression, means that air rage may become a major issue in coming years.

**(C)** Aside from discomfort and disruption, air rage poses some very real dangers to flying. The most extreme of these is when out of control passengers enter the cockpit. This has actually happened on a number of occasions, the worst of which have resulted in the death and injury of pilots or the intruder taking control of the plane, almost resulting in crashes. In addition, berserk passengers sometimes attempt to open the emergency doors while in flight, putting the whole aircraft in danger. These are extreme examples and cases of air rage more commonly result in physical assaults on fellow passengers and crew such as throwing objects, punching, stabbing or scalding with hot coffee.

**(D)** The causes of air rage are not known for certain, but it is generally thought that factors include: passenger behavior and personality, the physical environment and changes in society. A recent study has identified the issues that start the incidents to be as follows.

Alcohol	25%
Seating	16%
Smoking	10%
Carry on luggage	9%
Flight attendants	8%
Food	5%

**(E)** One of the major causes seems to be the passenger's behavior or their personality. Fear of flying and the feeling of powerlessness associated with flying can lead to irritable or aggressive passengers. Also, alcohol consumed on a plane pressurized to 8000ft affects the drinker more quickly and the effects are stronger. Many people do not take account of this and drinking may increase any negative reaction to the flying environment they have, which, combined with the lowering of their inhibitions, may cause air rage. Smoking withdrawal, which some liken in severity to opiate withdrawal, is another major cause of air rage incidents. Passengers caught smoking in the toilets occasionally assault flight attendants and have been known to start fires. When conflicts occur in these conditions, they can escalate into major incidents if the passenger has a violent personality or a fear of flying and because of the enclosed nature of a plane offers no option of retreat as would be natural in a "fight or flight" reaction.

**(F)** Some people feel that the physical environment of a plane can lead to air rage. Seats on most airlines have become smaller in recent years as airlines try to increase profits. This leads to uncomfortable and irritated passengers. Also, space for carry on luggage is often very small. Because up to 8% of checked in luggage is lost, misdirected or stolen, passengers have been trying to fit larger carry on items into these small storage areas and this can lead to disputes that can escalate into air rage. Airlines could also be to blame by raising passengers' expectations too high with their marketing and advertising. Many air rage incidents start when disappointed passengers demand to be resealed. Finally, there is some evidence to show that low oxygen levels can raise aggression level and make people feel more desperate. Airlines have lowered oxygen levels to save money. Now the level of oxygen in the air that the pilots breathe is ten times higher than in cabin class.

**(G)** Another reason that has been suggested is that society is getting ruder and less patient. The increased congestion at airports, longer queues and increased delays have only added to this. In addition, some air rage incidents have been linked to the demanding nature of high achieving business people, who do not like people telling them what to do and resent the power that the cabin staff have over them. For them, a flight attendant is a waiter or waitress who should do what the passenger wants.

**(H)** The strongest calls for action to control air rage have come from pilots and aircrew. The International Transport Workers' Federation argues that there are too many loopholes that let people escape punishment and that the penalties are too light. They want to notify all passengers of the penalties for air rage before taking off, rather than after the passenger begins to cause serious problems, when it may be too late. The Civil Aviation Organisation has been organizing international cooperation and penalties have increased in recent years. The most severe punishment so far has been a 51 month jail sentence, a fine to pay for the jet fuel used and 200 hours community service for a man who attempted to enter the cockpit and to open the emergency door of a domestic US flight.



(I) Various other measures are being used to control air rage. Air crew are getting training on how to calm passengers and how to predict where incidents might result in air rage and take action to prevent this. Other measures include, strengthening doors to stop people entering the cockpit, training crew in the use of plastic restraints to tie down unruly passengers and having pilots divert their planes if passengers cause problems. Banning passengers who are guilty of air rage from flying has also been tried to a lesser extent.

### Questions 1-8

The IELTS reading sample passage has nine paragraphs A – I.

From the list below choose the most suitable headings for B – I.

Write the appropriate number (i – xiv) beside the boxes 1 – 8 on your answer sheet.

**Note:** There are more headings than paragraphs, so you do not have to use them all.

#### List of headings

- i. A decline in the tolerance of passengers.
- ii. Disproportionate growth.
- iii. Pilots and aircrew cooperate.
- iv. Additional action.
- v. Smaller seats are the norm.
- vi. Laying the blame with the airlines
- vii. Origins.
- viii. A major threat to travel.
- ix. Demands for change.
- x. Business people fly more.
- xi. New research pinpoints the causes.
- xii. The pace of life.
- xiii. Passenger at the root of the problems.
- xiv. Personal experience.

**Example:**

Paragraph A

Answer: vii

1. Paragraph B
  2. Paragraph C
  3. Paragraph D
  4. Paragraph E
  5. Paragraph F
  6. Paragraph G
  7. Paragraph H
  8. Paragraph I
- 

**IELTS Reading Sample: Questions 9 – 14**

*Do the following statements agree with the information in the reading sample text? Mark them as follows.*

**TRUE** - if the statement agrees with the information in the text.

**FALSE** - if the statement does not agree with the information in the text.

**NOT GIVEN** - if there is no information on this in the text.

9. In the first case of air rage, one of the reasons the man was not punished was because the plane was not registered.
10. The statistics on air rage were collected by private monitoring groups.
11. The second most common catalyst for incidents is problems with seating.
12. The environment in a plane makes disagreements more likely to become serious problems.
13. Airlines have been encouraging passengers to bring more items onboard as carry-on luggage.
14. There have been no attempts to ban passengers with a history of air rage.

## IELTS Writing Answer Sheet – TASK 1



Candidate Name

Centre Number

Candidate Number

Module (shade one box)

Academic ☐

General Training ☐

Test date

D

D

M

M

Y

Y

Y

Y

## TASK 1

The map shows how a village called Ryemouth has developed over the last twenty-five years. There have been several changes, the most noticeable being the increases in accommodation, the elimination of the fishing industry, and the introduction of sports facilities.

In 1995, to the south of the village where the sea is, there was previously a fishing industry, with a fishing port and quite a large fish market as well. Next to this was a small cafe. On the other side of the road running by the sea stood a line of five shops and a hotel, while situated in the north east part of the village was farmland and a park with trees. The main housing of the village was located in the north west around a main road that runs from the coastal road, with twelve houses, four of them encircled by a smaller side-street.

Do not write below this line

Turning to the present day map, it can be seen that the fishing facilities have all gone, being replaced by four apartments, and the shops have become restaurants. The cafe remains, as does the hotel, along with parking facilities which it did not have before. Having been converted into a golf course, the farmland has now gone, while the forest park has been removed to make way for tennis courts. Although the old houses remain, new ones have been built, along with a new road with two new houses beside it.

Do not write below this line

## OFFICIAL USE ONLY

Candidate Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--	--

TA

CC

LR

GRA

Examiner 2 Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Underlength

No. of words

Penalty

Off-topic

Memorised

Illegible

Candidate Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--	--

TA

CC

LR

GRA

Examiner 1 Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Underlength

No. of words

Penalty

Off-topic

Memorised

Illegible

## IELTS Listening Answer Sheet

**Centre number:**

Pencil must be used to complete this sheet.

Please write your **full name** in CAPITAL letters on the line below:

Then write your six digit Candidate number in the boxes and shade the number in the grid on the right.



0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9



**Test date** (shade ONE box for the day, ONE box for the month and ONE box for the year):

**Day:** 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31

**Month:** 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 **Year** (last 2 digits): 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24

		Marker use only		Marker use only
1	(a) Keep-fit (studio)	✓ 1 x	21	✓ 21 x
2	Swimming	✓ 2 x	22	✓ 22 x
3	yoga (classes)	✓ 3 x	23	✓ 23 x
4	(a) salad bar	✓ 4 x	24	✓ 24 x
5	500	✓ 5 x	25	✓ 25 x
6	1	✓ 6 x	26	✓ 26 x
7	10 (am), 4.30 (pm)	✓ 7 x	27	✓ 27 x
8	180	✓ 8 x	28	✓ 28 x
9	assessment	✓ 9 x	29	✓ 29 x
10	Kynchley	✓ 10 x	30	✓ 30 x
11		✓ 11 x	31	✓ 31 x
12		✓ 12 x	32	✓ 32 x
13		✓ 13 x	33	✓ 33 x
14		✓ 14 x	34	✓ 34 x
15		✓ 15 x	35	✓ 35 x
16		✓ 16 x	36	✓ 36 x
17		✓ 17 x	37	✓ 37 x
18		✓ 18 x	38	✓ 38 x
19		✓ 19 x	39	✓ 39 x
20		✓ 20 x	40	✓ 40 x

Marker 2	
Initials	

Marker 1	
Initials	

Band	
Score	

Listening	
Total	

Please write your **full name** in CAPITAL letters on the line below:

Please write your Candidate number on the line below:

Please write your three digit language code in the boxes and shade the numbers in the grid on the right.



0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9



**Are you:** Female? ☐ Male? ☐

## Reading Reading Reading Reading Reading Reading

**Module taken** (shade one box):

Academic ☐

General Training ☐

		Marker use only		Marker use only
1	Paragraph B-ii	✓ 1 x	21	✓ 21 x
2	Paragraph C-viii	✓ 2 x	22	✓ 22 x
3	Paragraph D-xi	✓ 3 x	23	✓ 23 x
4	Paragraph E-xiii	✓ 4 x	24	✓ 24 x
5	Paragraph F-vi	✓ 5 x	25	✓ 25 x
6	Paragraph G-i	✓ 6 x	26	✓ 26 x
7	Paragraph H-ix	✓ 7 x	27	✓ 27 x
8	Paragraph I-v	✓ 8 x	28	✓ 28 x
9	False (Para. A: The plane was registered, but it was not clear where it was registered)	✓ 9 x	29	✓ 29 x
10	Not given (Para. B: It doesn't say who collected them)	✓ 10 x	30	✓ 30 x
11	True (Para. D: This is given in the table)	✓ 11 x	31	✓ 31 x
12	True (Para. F: The 'physical environment' makes things worse)	✓ 12 x	32	✓ 32 x
13	Not given (It doesn't mention this)	✓ 13 x	33	✓ 33 x
14	False (Para. I: They have tried to ban passengers who have been involved in air rage before)	✓ 14 x	34	✓ 34 x
15		✓ 15 x	35	✓ 35 x
16		✓ 16 x	36	✓ 36 x
17		✓ 17 x	37	✓ 37 x
18		✓ 18 x	38	✓ 38 x
19		✓ 19 x	39	✓ 39 x
20		✓ 20 x	40	✓ 40 x

Marker 2	
Initials	

Marker 1	
Initials	

Band	
Score	

Reading	
Total	



### Tips and Tricks

#### الصعوبات التي يمكن أن تواجهك في اختيار الإجابة في سؤال الاستماع

##### سماع الكلمات:

أغلب الحالات في السؤال السماعي عندما تري الاختيارات ونركز على سماع الكلمة التي تكون ضمن الاختيارات في الإجابة، هذه الطريقة تجعلنا لا نركز على باقي الكلام وهذه نقطة مهمة جدًا لأننا لن نجد دائمًا الإجابات مباشرة. إذا سنلتزم بسماع الكلام بانتباه ولا نركز على سماع الكلمات الموجودة ضمن الاختيارات فقط.

##### إعادة الصياغة والمرادفات (Paraphrases and Synonyms):

لن نجد دائمًا الإجابات التي أمامنا مثل الجزء السماعي، فممكّن ان نجد المقطع الصوتي (الترك) الذي نسمعه به مرادفات للكلام بدلًا من الكلمات في الاختيارات أو في السؤال مباشرة.

##### اختلاف الترتيب:

لن نجد دائمًا الشخص الذي يتحدث في المقطع الصوتي (الترك) يتكلم عن النقاط بنفس الترتيب الذي نراه أمامنا في السؤال أو الاختيارات.

Thank you for coming to my talk this evening. It's nice to see so many people in the audience. For those of you who don't know very much about PS Camping, let me start by giving you some background information about the company.

The company started twenty-five years ago. It actually started as a retail chain selling camping equipment, and then twenty years ago, it bought a small number of campsites in the UK, and began offering camping holidays. The company grew rapidly and has been providing holidays in continental Europe for the last fifteen years.

1. PS Camping has been organising holidays for \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. 15 years
- B. 20 years
- C. 25 years

If you book a camping holiday with us, you'll have a choice of over three hundred sites. In Italy we have some 64 sites that we either own, or have exclusive use of. France is where we have the majority of sites, and we currently have a project to expand into Switzerland. We also have a number of sites in Northern Spain, particularly the mountainous region of Picos de Europa. We've upgraded all these Spanish sites, and improved them considerably from their original three-star rating.

2. The company has most camping sites in \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. France
- B. Italy
- C. Switzerland

### The Answer

1. B

إذا كان تركيزك على سماع الكلمة الصحيحة فقط في التراك فسيختلط عليك الأمر ولن تعرف الإجابة الصحيحة، ستلاحظ أن كلهم سنوات وكلاهما متوفرين في التراك والاختيارات، ستلاحظ أن السؤال تم إعادة صياغته في التراك لأنه ليس به أي جزء يقول فيه المتحدث "Organising holidays" ولكنه يقول "Began offering holidays" و "Providing holidays" وهذه النقطة قد تشتتكم لأننا نريد أن نحدد أيهما تتوافق مع السؤال لتحديد الإجابة الصحيحة، وستلاحظ أيضًا أن ترتيب الإجابات مختلف عن الترتيب في التراك. لذلك لا بد أن تعطي كامل تركيزك على كل كلمة تقال بخصوص السنوات، فستجد كلام محدد في التراك سيدلك على الاختيار الصحيح للإجابة مثلما يلي:

- A. 15 years (*has been providing holidays in continental Europe for the last fifteen years*)
- B. 20 years (*twenty years ago, it bought a small number of campsites in the UK, and began offering camping holidays*)
- C. 25 years (*The company started twenty five years ago*)

2. A

ستلاحظ أيضًا في هذا السؤال أن كل الاختيارات مذكورة في التراك، ومثلما قلنا أنك يجب أن تعطي كامل انتباهك لسماع التراك بتركيز حتى تختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

إذا فعلت ذلك ستعرف أن الإجابة الصحيحة هي A لأن التراك يعيد صياغة "Most camping sites" ويقول "Majority of sites".



### Academic Writing Task 1

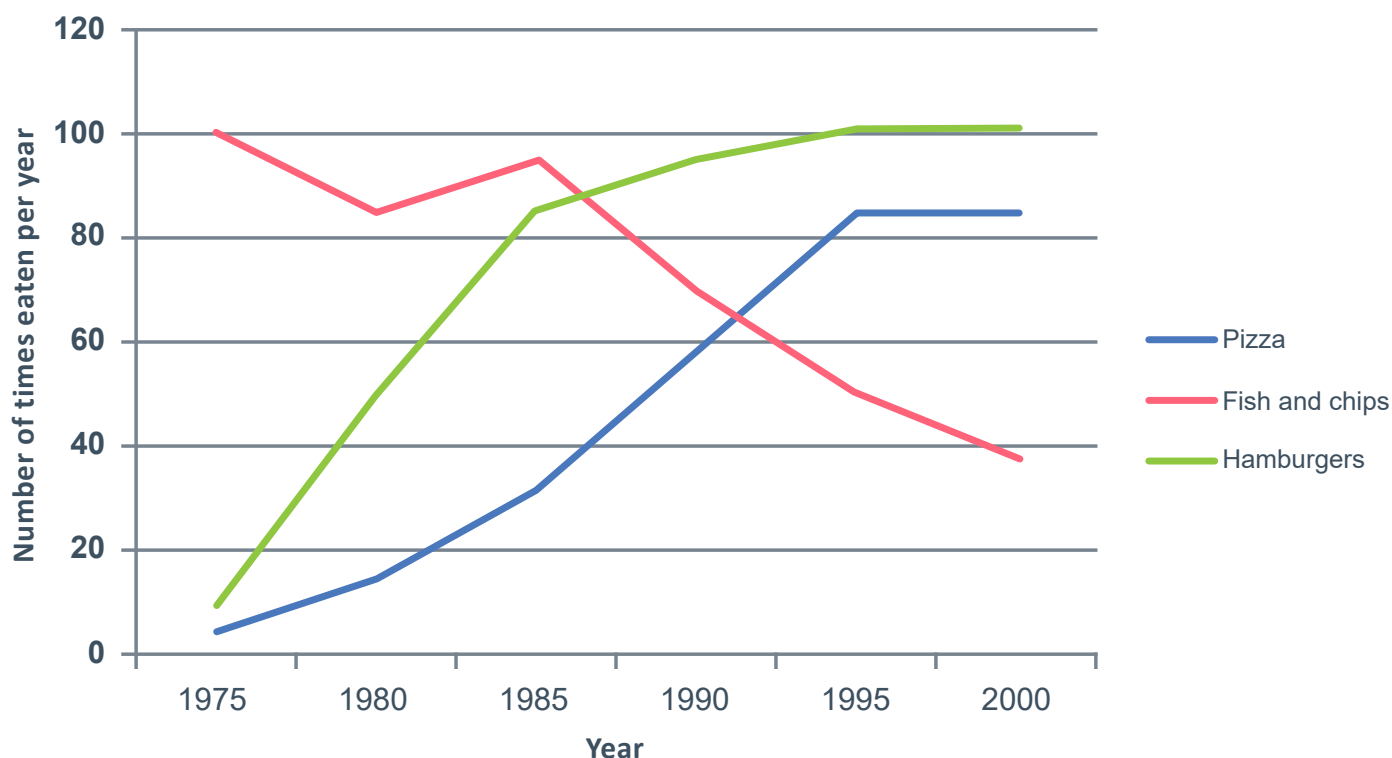
You should spend about 20 minutes on this task.

*The line graph below shows changes in the amount and type of fast food consumed by Australian teenagers from 1975 to 2000.*

*Summarize the information by selecting and reporting the main features and make comparisons where relevant.*

Write at least 150 words.

### Consumption of Fast Food by Australian Teenagers





### Tips and Tricks

لتكوين الموضوع نحتاج 3 نقاط أساسية وهي:

1. تقديم الرسم البياني.
2. إعطاء نظرة عامة.
3. توفير التفاصيل.

#### • تقديم الرسم البياني:

يجب أن نبدأ الموضوع بجملة أو اثنتين لهم علاقة بالرسم البياني الموضح، ولعمل ذلك يمكن أن نستخدم ال paraphrasing الذي تكلمنا عنها في الدرس السابق. → [visit the link](#)  
إذا سنعيد صياغة عنوان الرسم البياني فنقول مثلاً:

The line graph compares the fast food consumption of teenagers in Australia between 1975 and 2000, a period of 25 years.

#### • إعطاء نظرة عامة:

في هذه النقطة سنحتاج لتوضيح الاتجاه الأساسي الموجود في الرسم البياني، في هذه الجزئية نحتاج لتوفير بعض التفاصيل وليس الكثير منها (وصف الرسم البياني بشكل عام)، فيوجد مثلاً في الرسم البياني شيء ملحوظ وهو أن هناك نوع واحد بالتحديد فقط شهرته على مدار فترة معينة حيث أن النوعين الآخرين زاد استهلاكهما، وهذا بالضبط ما نقصده بالنظرة العامة.

إذا سنشرح الاتجاه الأساسي أو الشيء الملحوظ في الرسم البياني، فيمكن أن نقول:

Overall, the consumption of fish and chips declined over the period, whereas the amount of pizza and hamburgers that were eaten increased.

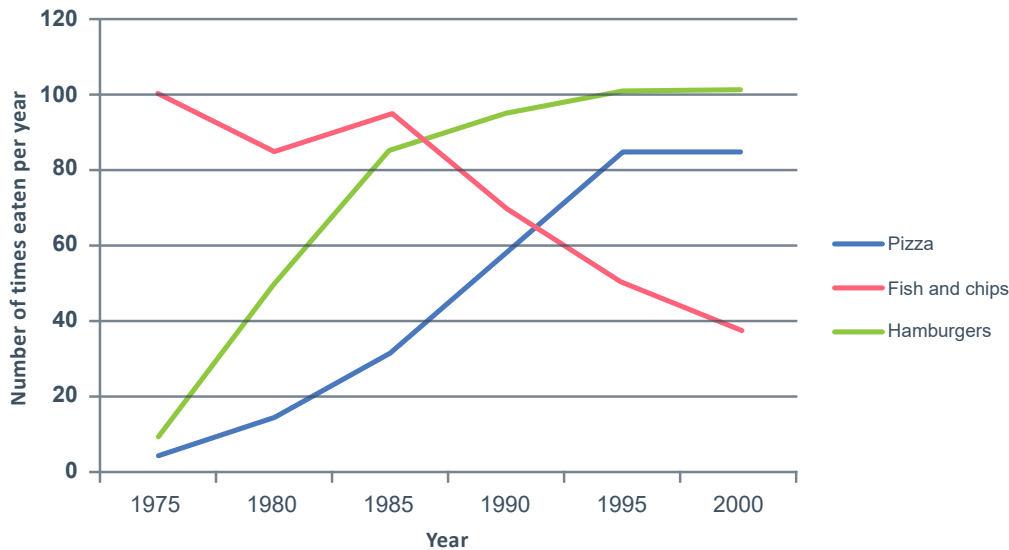
مثلاً لاحظت لقد قمنا بتوفير نظرة عاملة ولم نقم بكتابة تفاصيل كثيرة، ويمكنك أن تستخدمها كخاتمة للموضوع أو في أول الموضوع، فالأمر يرجع إليك على حسب نظرتك واختيارك.

#### • توفير التفاصيل:

أما في هذه النقطة نستطيع توضيح وشرح التفاصيل اللازمة بكل اريحية مع مراعاة الالتزام بالنقاط الأساسية للموضوع والاشارة إلى البيانات المتوفرة معنا في الرسم البياني.

ومن أهم الأشياء التي نريدها لجمع المعلومات المتوفرة التي أمامنا على أساس نمطي، سنحتاج لتحديد الأشياء المتشابهة والمختلفة في الرسم البياني التالي:

**Consumption of Fast Food by Australian Teenagers**



مثلما وضعنا في النظرة العامة أن استهلاك الـ Fish and chips قل على مدار الوقت في حيث ان استهلاك البيتزا والـ Hamburgers زاد، فسنلاحظ أن هناك نمط أو شيء مشترك بين البيتزا والـ Hamburger وعلى هذا الأساس نقدر نجمع معلوماتنا في groups ونقوم بتركيز فقرة من موضوعنا على الـ Fish and chips.

إذا الفقرة الأولى عن Fish and chips:

In 1975, the most popular fast food with Australian teenagers was fish and chips, being eaten 100 times a year. This was far higher than Pizza and hamburgers, which were consumed approximately 5 times a year. However, apart from a brief rise again from 1980 to 1985, the consumption of fish and chips gradually declined over the 25-year timescale to finish at just under 40.

والفقرة الثانية عن Pizza and hamburgers:

In sharp contrast to this, teenagers ate the other two fast foods at much higher levels. Pizza consumption increased gradually until it overtook the consumption of fish and chips in 1990. It then levelled off from 1995 to 2000. The biggest rise was seen in hamburgers as the occasions they were eaten increased sharply throughout the 1970's and 1980's, exceeding that of fish and chips in 1985. It finished at the same level that fish and chips began, with consumption at 100 times a year.

## TASK 1

The line graph compares the fast food consumption of teenagers in Australia between 1975 and 2000, a period of 25 years. Overall, the consumption of fish and chips declined over the period, whereas the amount of pizza and hamburgers that were eaten increased.

In 1975, the most popular fast food with Australian teenagers was fish and chips, being eaten 100 times a year. This was far higher than Pizza and hamburgers, which were consumed approximately 5 times a year. However, apart from a brief rise again from 1980 to 1985, the consumption of fish and chips gradually declined over the 25 year timescale to finish at just under 40.

In sharp contrast to this, teenagers ate the other two fast foods at much higher levels. Pizza consumption increased gradually until it overtook the consumption of fish and chips in 1990. It then levelled off from 1995 to 2000. The biggest rise was seen in hamburgers as the occasions they were eaten increased sharply throughout the 1970's and 1980's, exceeding that of fish and chips in 1985. It finished at the same level that fish and chips began, with consumption at 100 times a year.





## Tips and Tricks

تتراوح عدد كلمات قطعة القراءة ما بين 600 لـ 800 كلمة، وهناك 3 أنواع من الأسئلة:

1. Choose
2. Complete
3. True / False / Not Given

### توفيق العنوان المناسب للفقرة المناسبة

هذا النوع من الأسئلة يمكن أن يقابلك في الاختبار، لذلك لاختيار عنوان مناسب أتبع الآتي:

1. قراءة العناوين المتوفرة.
2. قراءة أول فقرة.
3. قراءة الـ topic sentence بعناية لأن في أغلب الحالات سنحتاج لقراءة الـ topic sentence فقط قبل ما نعرف إذا كانت هذه الفقرة المناسبة أم لا.
4. الانتقال إلى الفقرة التالية في حالة عدم تناسب العنوان مع الـ topic
5. في حالة توفر عناوين محتملين سنكتب الاجابتين ثم نختار عنوان منهم لاستبعاده لفقرة مناسبة أكثر.

### بعض النقاط الهامة:

- يوجد هناك دائماً اختيارات عناوين أكثر من الفقرات الموجودة في القطعة.
- كن حريصاً من المرادفات، مثل الجزء السمعي لن تجد دائماً الكلمات الموجودة في الفقرة متوافقة 100% مع الكلمات المستخدمة في العنوان.
- تواجد اسم أو كلمة معينة في الفقرة والعنوان لا يعني ان هذه الإجابة الصحيحة، ستحتاج لقراءة الفقرة بعناية لتحديد العنوان المناسب، لا تختار اجابتك اعتماداً على تشابه الكلمات.



## Yoruba Town

- A.** The Yoruba people of Nigeria classify their towns in two ways. Permanent towns with their own governments are called “ilu”, whereas temporary settlements, set up to support work in the country are “aba”. Although ilu tend to be larger than aba, the distinction is not one of size, some aba are large, while declining ilu can be small, but of purpose. There is no “typical” Yoruba town, but some features are common to most towns.
- B.** In the 19<sup>th</sup> century most towns were heavily fortified and the foundations of these walls are sometimes visible. Collecting tolls to enter and exit through the walls was a major source of revenue for the old town rulers, as were market fees. The markets were generally located centrally and in small towns, while in large towns there were permanent stands made of corrugated iron or concrete. The market was usually next to the local ruler’s palace.
- C.** The palaces were often very large. In the 1930’s, the area of Oyo’s palace covered 17 acres, and consisted of a series of courtyards surrounded by private and public rooms. After colonisation, many of the palaces were completely or partially demolished. Often the rulers built two storey houses for themselves using some of the palace grounds for government buildings.
- D.** The town is divided into different sections. In some towns these are regular, extending out from the center of the town like spokes on a wheel, while in others, where space is limited, they are more random. The different areas are further divided into compounds called “ile”. These vary in size considerably from single dwellings to up to thirty houses. They tend to be larger in the North. Large areas are devoted to government administrative buildings. Newer developments such as industrial or commercial areas or apartment housing for civil servants tend to be built on the edge of the town.
- E.** Houses are rectangular and either have a courtyard in the center or the rooms come off a central corridor. Most social life occurs in the courtyard. They are usually built of hardened mud and have roofs of corrugated iron or, in the countryside, thatch. Buildings of this material are easy to alter, either by knocking down rooms or adding new ones. And can be improved by coating the walls with cement. Richer people often build their houses of concrete blocks and, if they can afford to, build two storey houses. Within compounds there can be quite a mixture of building types. Younger well-educated people may have well furnished houses while their older relatives live in mud walled buildings and sleep on mats on the floor.
- F.** The builder or the most senior man gets a room either near the entrance or, in a two storied house, next to the balcony. He usually has more than one room. Junior men get a room each and there are separate rooms for teenage boys and girls to sleep in. Younger children sleep with their mothers. Any empty rooms are used as storage, let out or, if they face the street, used as shops.
- G.** Amenities vary. In some towns most of the population uses communal water taps and only the rich have piped water, in others piped water is more normal. Some areas have toilets, but bucket toilets are common with waste being collected by a “night soil man”. Access to water and electricity are key political issues.

## List of Paragraph Headings

- i. Town Facilities
- ii. Colonisation
- iii. Urban divisions
- iv. Architectural home styles
- v. Types of settlements
- vi. Historical foundations
- vii. Domestic arrangements
- viii. City defenses
- ix. The residences of the rulers
- x. Government buildings

## Match the heading with the paragraph

Example: Paragraph A

Answer: v

1. Paragraph B

2. Paragraph C

3. Paragraph D

4. Paragraph E

5. Paragraph F

6. Paragraph G



## Paragraph Headings Answer Discussion

### Paragraph B

#### (vi) - Historical foundations

- B. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century most towns were heavily fortified and the foundations of these walls are sometimes visible. Collecting tolls to enter and exit through the walls was a major source of revenue for the old town rulers, as were market fees. The markets were generally located centrally and in small towns, while in large towns there were permanent stands made of corrugated iron or concrete. The market was usually next to the local ruler's palace.

**Explanation** *In this first question, the word 'foundation' is in the topic sentence. This does not automatically make 'vi' the correct answer. However, it is a good reason to flag this up as a possibility. The heading also refers to 'history', so the reference to '19th century' in the topic sentence tells us the paragraph is about the history. A quick skim of the paragraph confirms this.*

### Paragraph C

#### (ix) - The residences of the rulers

- C. The palaces were often very large. In the 1930's, the area of Oyo's palace covered 17 acres, and consisted of a series of courtyards surrounded by private and public rooms. After colonization, many of the palaces were completely or partially demolished. Often the rulers built two storey houses for themselves using some of the palace grounds for government buildings.

**Explanation** *The topic sentence mentions the palaces, which is where the rulers of Yoruba would likely live, and the heading mentioned the homes (residences) of the rulers, so it is likely to be ix. Reading the rest of the paragraph confirms that the whole paragraph talks generally about the palaces in Yoruba. Don't be tricked by the 'colonisation' heading. This only refers to one sentence in the paragraph, not the whole paragraph. It is therefore a supporting point rather than the main idea.*





## Paragraph D

### (iii) - Urban divisions

- D. The town is divided into different sections. In some towns these are regular, extending out from the center of the town like spokes on a wheel, while in others, where space is limited, they are more random. The different areas are further divided into compounds called "ile". These vary in size considerably from single dwellings to up to thirty houses. They tend to be larger in the North. Large areas are devoted to government administrative buildings. Newer developments such as industrial or commercial areas or apartment housing for civil servants tend to be built on the edge of the town.

Explanation

*The answer is first seen in the topic sentence. The word 'divided' should have flagged this up to you as a possibility. Notice the use of the synonym 'urban' to replace 'town'. It is common to see synonyms in paragraph headings questions and other IELTS reading questions.*

## Paragraph E

### (iv) - Architectural home styles

- E. Houses are rectangular and either have a courtyard in the center or the rooms come off a central corridor. Most social life occurs in the courtyard. They are usually built of hardened mud and have roofs of corrugated iron or, in the countryside, thatch. Buildings of this material are easy to alter, either by knocking down rooms or adding new ones. And can be improved by coating the walls with cement. Richer people often build their houses of concrete blocks and, if they can afford to, build two storey houses. Within compounds there can be quite a mixture of building types. Younger well-educated people may have well furnished houses while their older relatives live in mud walled buildings and sleep on mats on the floor.

Explanation

*The topic sentence starts to give you a clue that 'iv' is the correct choice of the paragraph headings as it discusses houses and their styles. This is then discussed further in the supporting sentences that follow.*



## Paragraph F

### (vii) - Domestic arrangements

- F. The builder or the most senior man gets a room either near the entrance or, in a two storied house, next to the balcony. He usually has more than one room. Junior men get a room each and there are separate rooms for teenage boys and girls to sleep in. Younger children sleep with their mothers. Any empty rooms are used as storage, let out or, if they face the street, used as shops.

Explanation

*In this context, 'domestic' means of or relating to the home, so the heading is referring to the arrangements within the home. Again, just by reading the topic sentence you can see that this paragraph is discussing home arrangements and skimming through the rest of the paragraph confirms this.*

## Paragraph G

### (i) - Town facilities

- G. Amenities vary. In some towns most of the population uses communal water taps and only the rich have piped water, in others piped water is more normal. Some areas have toilets, but bucket toilets are common with waste being collected by a "night soil man". Access to water and electricity are key political issues.

Explanation

*'Facilities' is a synonym of 'amenities' so this is the first clue that this could fit this paragraph, but you need to read on to confirm that the paragraph is discussing the facilities of the town, which it is.*



## Role

position or purpose that someone or something has. It could also mean; an actor's part in a play, film, etc.

- The equipment will play a vital **role** in the fight against cancer.
- You have the most important **role** of all.

## Section (n)

a part that is separated. It could also mean; one of the areas into which the economic activity of a country is divided.

- The northern **section** of the route is difficult to traverse.
- Why don't we skip this **section** and just move on to the next one.

## Section (v)

to cut or separate into sections.

- It's easy to **section** an orange.

## Sector

an area or portion that is distinct from others. It could also mean; a sociological, economic, or political subdivision of society.

- Operations in the southern **sector** of the North Sea have been halted.
- There has to be cooperation between the public and private **sectors**.
- Admiral we have enemy ships in **Sector** forty seven

## Similar

having a resemblance in appearance, character, or quantity, without being identical.

- Middle eastern regional cuisines are quite **similar**.
- We're all quite **similar** in the end.

## Significant

having meaning; indicative of something.  
It could also mean: important or worthy of attention.

- In times of stress her dreams seemed to her especially **significant**.
- Your brother represented a **significant** investment.

## Source

a place, person, or thing from which something originates or can be obtained.

- Mackerel is a good **source** of fish oil.
- Well, now we know the **source** of the numbers, but we don't know what they mean.

## Specific

clearly defined or identified.

- The employer is looking for a candidate with a **specific** set of skills.
- I specialize in a very **specific** type of security.

## Vary

to exhibit or undergo change.

- The colors of the sky were constantly **varying**.
- The statistics **vary** widely.

## Variable

an element, feature, or factor that is subject to variation or change.

- There are too many **variables** involved to make any meaningful predictions about the future.
- You know as well as I do, there are too many **variables**.

### Structure

the arrangement of something complex. It could also mean: a building or object constructed from several parts.

- The two sentences have equivalent **structure**.
- Vitra Fire Station is a magnificent **structure** that should not be demolished.
- Now, I propose it should be a modest economical **structure**.

### Theory

a plausible or scientifically acceptable general principle. It could also mean: an idea used to justify a course of action.

- Chomsky's Universal Grammar **theory** assumes that a certain set of structural rules are innate to humans.
- Just as I thought. This proves my **theory**, look at your brother.





### Choose the correct answer

- 1- an area or portion that is distinct from others. It could also mean; a sociological, economic, or political subdivision of society.
  - a) Sector
  - b) Section
  - c) Source
- 2- a place, person, or thing from which something originates or can be obtained.
  - a) Theory
  - b) Specific
  - c) Source
- 3- To exhibit or undergo change.
  - a) Variable
  - b) Vary
  - c) Significant
- 4- Having meaning; indicative of something. It could also mean: important or worthy of attention.
  - a) Significant
  - b) Similar
  - c) Structure
- 5- A part that is separated. It could also mean; one of the areas into which the economic activity of a country is divided.
  - a) Sector
  - b) Source
  - c) Section
- 6- Position or purpose that someone or something has. It could also mean; an actor's part in a play, film, etc.
  - a) Role
  - b) Variable
  - c) Vary

**7-** Having a resemblance in appearance, character, or quantity, without being identical.

- a) Structure
- b) Similar
- c) Specific

**8-** Clearly defined or identified.

- a) Specific
- b) Section
- c) Variable

**9-** An element, feature, or factor that is subject to variation or change.

- a) Vary
- b) Significant
- c) Variable

**10-** The arrangement of something complex. It could also mean: a building or object constructed from several parts.

- a) Section
- b) Sector
- c) Structure

**11-** a plausible or scientifically acceptable general principle. It could also mean: an idea used to justify a course of action.

- a) Theory
- b) Vary
- c) Similar

## The Answer



1- Sector

2- Source

3- Vary



4- Significant

5- Section

6- Role



7- Similar

8- Specific

9- Variable



10-Structure

11-Theory



## Academic Word List

### Role

Roles

### Section

Sectioned

Sectioning

Sections

### Sector

Sectors

### Significant

Insignificant

Insignificantly

Significance

Significantly

Signified

Signifies

Signify

Signifying

### Similar

Dissimilar

Similarities

Similarity

Similarly

### Source

Sourced

Sources

Sourcing

### Specific

Specifically

Specification

Specifications

Specificity

Specifics

### Structure

Restructure

Restructured

Restructures

Restructuring

Structural

Structurally

Structured

Structures

Structuring

Unstructured

### Theory

Theoretical

Theoretically

Theories

Theorist

Theorists

### Vary

Invariable

Invariably

Variability

Variable

Variables

Variably

Variance

Variant

Variants

Variation

Variations

Varied

Varies

Varying





## Complex Sentences

Complex sentences هي جملة تتكون من Independent Clause و Dependent Clause ونستخدم Subordinating Conjunctions للربط بينهم.

- Our children may not be properly educated if we don't spend more on schools.

لا يمكن ان نستخدم ال Dependent Clause فقط في الجملة، لأنها لا تدل معنى:

- because it was raining so hard...

إذا ال Dependent Clause يجب ان نستخدم معه Independent Clause لشرح وتوضيح معنى الجملة.

- I took my umbrella because it was raining so hard.

ويوجد 3 أنواع من Complex sentences وهما:

Adverbial Clauses

Relative Clauses

Noun Clauses

### Adverbial Clauses

هي التي تجيب على أسئلة ( كيف / متى / أين / لماذا ) ومثلما قلنا يتكونوا من Dependent Clause و Independent Clause وبينهم Subordinating Conjunctions.

- Some experiments on animals give us the wrong result because animals' bodies are not exactly the same as our own.

نلاحظ في المثال السابق أن ال Independent Clause هي:

Some experiments on animals give us the wrong result

وال Dependent Clause هي:

because animals' bodies are not exactly the same as our own

ويمكن ان نعكس ترتيب الجملتين بشرط أن نضيف comma بينهم.

Because animals' bodies are not exactly the same as our own, some experiments on animals give us the wrong result.

...

## More Examples

- Even though he arrived late, he did not apologize.
- Pollution will get worse if car emissions are not reduced.
- While the number of people going to Japan increased, the number going to the UK decreased.
- I don't know when he will arrive.

## Relative Clauses

هي جملة الصلة التي يكون بها Relative Pronouns مثل: ( who / which / that / where ).

ونستخدم ال Relative Clause لقول معلومات أكثر عن الشيء الذي نتكلم عنه ولهذا السبب يأتوا بعد الاسم الذي نريد شرحه للمستمع أو القارئ.

- Animal experimentation, which is legal in most countries, should be banned.

نلاحظ في المثال السابق أن ال Independent Clause هي:

Animals experimentation should be banned

وال ال Dependent (relative) Clause هي:

which is legal in most countries

## More Examples

- A library is a place where you can borrow books.
- Global warming is a problem that must be solved.
- Obesity, which is the condition of being overweight, affects millions of children.
- A person who breaks the law must face serious penalties.



## Noun Clauses

هو الذي يجيب على أسئلة (who / what)، ويأتي بعد الفعل على عكس الـ Relative Clause الذي يأتي بعد الاسم.

- What do you think about corruption?

I think that corruptions is wrong and that those guilty of it should be punished.

في الجملة السابقة نلاحظ وجود 2 noun clauses.

ونلاحظ أيضًا أن الـ noun clauses هما الـ dependent clauses لأنهم ليس لهم معنى بدون Independent clause مثل I think في المثال السابق. إذا الـ dependent clauses هما:

that corruptions is wrong

that those guilty of it should be punished

## More Examples

- I agree that capital punishment must be abolished.
  - I hope that the government intervenes to resolve the situation.
  - I believe that experimentation on animals is unethical.
- يمكن أن نحذف that من الجمل السابقة أثناء الكلام ونقول:
- I believe experimentation on animals is unethical.



## Tips and Tricks

للحصول على درجة عالية في اختبار الآيلتس لابد أن يكون كلامك به مزيج بين أنواع الـ complex sentence المختلفة.



Choose the correct answer

1- He didn't buy the watch because it was so expensive

The dependent clause is:

- a) He didn't buy the watch
- b) because It was so expensive
- c) Because

2- I met the man \_\_\_\_\_ told me about the job.

- a) Who
- b) Which
- c) Where

3- Which is the most accurate sentence?

- a) Because the students were so sleepy, the teacher had to postpone the class.
- b) Because the students were so sleepy the teacher had to postpone the class.
- c) The teacher had to postpone the class, because the students were so sleepy.

4- Even though the weather was terrible, he managed to go to his work.

What's the type of this complex sentence?

- a) Adverbial clause
- b) Noun clause
- c) Relative clause

5- I think that the government should pay more attention to the education

What's the type of this complex sentence?

- a) Adverbial clause
- b) Noun clause
- c) Relative clause

6- The jacket that I wore yesterday was nice but it was over size.

What's the type of this complex sentence?

- a) Adverbial clause
- b) Noun clause
- c) Relative clause

7- Which from the following is a subordinating conjunction?

- a) Where
- b) While
- c) For

8- I believe that the mass media has a great influence on people, that we shouldn't underestimate it's power.

What's the type of the complex sentence?

- a) Adverbial clause
- b) Noun clause
- c) Relative clause

9- How many dependent clauses do we have here?

- a) One
- b) Two
- c) Three

10- \_\_\_\_\_ the time was running out, I managed to finish the essay.

- a) While
- b) Because
- c) Although

## The Answer



1- because It was so expensive

2- Who

3- Because the students were so sleepy,  
the teacher had to postpone the class.

4- Adverbial clause

5- Noun clause

6- Relative clause

7- While

8- Noun clause

9- Two

10- Because

## Achieve (v)

to succeed in finishing something or reaching an aim, especially after a lot of work or effort

- She finally **achieved** her ambition to visit South America.
- All right now what are the two ways that you can **achieve** that goal?

## Acquisition (n)

the process of getting something

- The **acquisition** of huge amounts of data has helped our research enormously.
- The **acquisition** of wealth is no longer the driving force in our lives
- Language **acquisition** (It means learning a language without being taught. It starts at a very young age.)

## Administration (n)

The process or activity of running a business, organization

the arrangements and tasks needed to control the operation of a plan or organization

- The university **administration** took their demands seriously.
- The Obama **administration** is collecting the phone records of millions of Verizon customers.

## Affect (v)

to have an influence on someone or something, or to cause a change in someone or something

- The divorce **affected** every aspect of her life.
- It's a disease that **affects** mainly older people
- I was deeply **affected** by the film (= it caused strong feelings in me).
- Bear in mind, this may **affect** the rest of your careers, your lives.

## Appropriate (adj)

suitable or right for a particular situation or occasion

- Is this film **appropriate** for small children?
- You would be well-advised to have the **appropriate** vaccinations before you go abroad.
- I found the **appropriate** response to these situations a long time ago.

## Aspect (n)

a way in which a thing may be viewed or regarded; interpretation, view

- That's the most worrying **aspect** of the situation.
- Have you thought about the problem from every **aspect**?
- These Infinity Stones each control an essential **aspect** of existence.

## Assistance (n)

help, aid, support

- Can I be of any **assistance**? = Can I help you?
- The first teams sent to provide **assistance** after the earthquake began arriving in the affected region yesterday.
- Can we have some medical **assistance** here, please?

## Category (n)

a group of people or things that have similar features

- Each **category** has several subdivisions.
- There are sporty people and non-sporty people, and I'm definitely in the second **category**.
- Okay, guys, let's be clear. We're gonna break this into four **categories**.

### Chapter (n)

Any of the separate parts into which a book or other piece of text is divided, usually given a number or title

- The book has exercises at the end of every **chapter**.
- Would you please open your textbooks to **chapter** eight and we'll get started.

### Commission (n)

The act of granting authority to undertake certain functions

- If you receive a government **commission**, that means you have been assigned a task by the government.
- Another common meaning of **commission** is the amount of money an employee earns when they sell something: In addition to his salary, he gets a 1% commission on each sale.
- The artist received a **commission** for a new painting to hang in the building lobby.
- I was gonna take my **commission** and buy Ferris a car.







### Choose the correct answer

- 1- To succeed in finishing something or reaching an aim, especially after a lot of work or effort.
  - a) affect
  - b) achieve
  - c) assist
- 2- Any of the separate parts into which a book or other piece of text is divided, usually given a number or title.
  - a) Chapter
  - b) Commission
  - c) Category
- 3- A way in which a thing may be viewed or regarded; interpretation, view.
  - a) Aspect
  - b) Acquisition
  - c) Administration
- 4- The process of getting something.
  - a) Acquisition
  - b) assistance
  - c) Appropriate
- 5- Help, aid, support.
  - a) Assistance
  - b) Commission
  - c) Categories
- 6- The amount of money an employee earns when they sell something.
  - a) Aspects
  - b) Chapter
  - c) Commission

**7-** A suitable or right for a particular situation or occasion.

- a) Appropriate
- b) Inappropriate
- c) Inappropriately

**8-** A group of people or things that have similar features.

- a) Category
- b) Categorise
- c) Categorising

**9-** The arrangements and tasks needed to control the operation of a plan or organization.

- a) Acquisition
- b) Administration
- c) Organization

**10-** To have an influence on someone or something, or to cause a change in someone or something.

- a) Aspect
- b) Effect
- c) Affect

## The Answer



- |            |   |                |   |                   |   |           |
|------------|---|----------------|---|-------------------|---|-----------|
| 1- achieve | } | 4- Acquisition | } | 7- Appropriate    | } | 10-Affect |
| 2- Chapter |   | 5- Assistance  |   | 8- Category       |   |           |
| 3- Aspect  |   | 6- Commission  |   | 9- Administration |   |           |



## Academic Word List

### Achieve

Achievable  
Achieved  
Achievement  
Achievements  
Achieves  
Achieving

### Acquire

Acquired  
Acquires  
Acquiring  
Acquisition  
Acquisitions

### Administrate

Administrates  
Administration  
Administrations  
Administrative  
Administratively  
Administrator  
Administrators

### Affect

Affected  
Affecting  
Affective  
Affectively  
Affects  
Unaffected

### Appropriate

Appropriacy  
Appropriately  
Appropriateness  
Inappropriacy  
Inappropriate  
Inappropriately

### Aspect

Aspects

### Assist

Assistance  
Assistant  
Assistants  
Assisted

Assisting

Assists

Unassisted

### Category

Categories  
Categorisation  
Categorise  
Categorised  
Categorises  
Categorising  
Categorization  
Categorized  
Categorizes  
Categorizing

### Chapter

Chapters

### Commission

Commissioned  
Commissioner  
Commissioners  
Commissioning  
Commissions

## Adverbial Clause

أنواع ال Adverbial Clause :

Time clauses

Reason clauses

Concession clauses

Conditional clauses

Purpose clause

Place clauses

### Time clauses

expressing time

Before

- He arrived **before** I did.

After

- **After** I have finished studying, I intend to work abroad.

As

- **As** the climate gets hotter, sea levels will rise.

As long as

- I will keep learning English for **as long as** it is necessary.

While

- **While** I am studying, I usually listen to the radio.

When

- Rates of obesity increase **when** too much junk food is eaten.

Since

- **Since** I started going to fitness, I have lost 5 kilos.

Until

- I will keep learning English **until** I am upper intermediate.

## Conditional clauses

Expressing a hypothesis or condition, real or imagined

If

- If we clone humans, it may have terrible consequences.
- What would you buy if you won the lottery?

Unless = if not

- Our food will not be safe unless GM crops are banned.

## Reason clauses

to explain why

Because

- My English is not improving because I am not studying enough.

Since

- Since the government cut spending, poverty has increased.

## Purpose clause

to show the purpose of doing something

In order to

- I am studying IELTS in order to attend university abroad.

So that

- He went to the gym so that he could lose weight.

## Concession clauses

to show contrast between statements or surprise

### Although

- **Although** e-readers are popular, most people still prefer books.

### Though

- The Minister wants to increase taxes **though** his party disagrees.

### Even though

- **Even though** I studied every day, I didn't get the score I needed (surprising)

### While

- Internet usage increased, **while** phone usage decreased.

### Whereas

- **Whereas** you have a lot of time to study, I do not.

## Place clauses

to talk about location of position

### Wherever

- **Wherever** he goes, I will go.

### Where

- I am not sure **where** I put my pen.





## Keep in Mind

1. **complex sentence** يتكون من **dependent clause** و **independent clause**.

2. **dependent clause** لا يمكن أن يأتي بدون **Independent clause** لشرح وتوضيح معني الجملة.

3. إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ **dependent clause** نضع **comma**.

- After I have finished studying, I intend to work abroad.

4. إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ **independent clause** لا نضع **comma**.

- I intend to work abroad after I have finished studying.

5. **while** و **whereas** استثناء من القاعدة السابقة لأنهم يسبقهم **commas** حتى إذا جاءوا في منتصف الجملة.

6. ليس شرط ان بعض الأحوال الذين في نفس الجروب ان لديهم نفس المعنى أو القدرة لاستخدامهم بدلا من بعض، فبعض الأحوال التي تكون في نفس الجروب قد يختلف معناهم ولا يمكن تبديلهم او استخدام كلمة بدلا من كلمة أخرى، فمثلا: **because / as / since** لهم نفس المعنى ويمكن ان نبدل بينهم في الاستخدام، وأيضا **though / although / even though** يمكن أن نبدل بينهم، ولكن أنظر إلى المثال التالي:

- I will go **if** you go.
- I will go **unless** you go.

يجب نفي الجملة الثانية لجعلها مثل الأولى:

- I won't go **unless** you go.

إذا الجملة الأولى والثالثة لهم نفس المعنى.



7. while / whereas أحياناً لا يمكن تبديلهما ويجب أن تعرف استخدام كلاهما جيداً وأن تفهم معنهما.

8. يوجد خطأ شائع وهو أن الكثير من الناس يكتبون **complex sentence** بهذا الشكل:

- My English is not improving. Because I am not studying enough.

لاحظ أن **full stop** فصلت الجملتين عن بعضهما، الجملة الثانية هي **dependent clause** تأتي منفصلة عن الجملة الأولى، ويجب أن تكون مرتبطة بالجملة الثانية لأنها ليس لها معنى إلا بوجود الجملة الأولى **independent clause**، والكتابة الأصح هي:

- My English is not improving because I am not studying enough.

9. تأكد أن **complex sentences** ليس بها **fragments** أي جمل غير كاملة وليس لها معنى.



## Choose the correct answer

- 1- Much of the food we eat would not actually last that long \_\_\_\_\_ it were not for the chemicals they contain.
  - a) Unless
  - b) If
  - c) Though
- 2- \_\_\_\_\_ have robust evaluation procedures in the future, both formal exams and continual assessment should be used to assess students during their education.
  - a) In order to
  - b) Since
  - c) Whereas
- 3- \_\_\_\_\_ chatting online can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings.
  - a) Where
  - b) Because
  - c) Although



- 4- Long prison sentences should remain for assault or murder \_\_\_\_\_ justice for the victim and their family should take priority.
- a) While
  - b) Even though
  - c) As
- 5- It is important that the government financially assists theatres \_\_\_\_\_ they can continue to provide entertainment to the public.
- a) In order to
  - b) So that
  - c) Until
- 6- I will keep studying hard \_\_\_\_\_ I pass the exam.
- a) Because
  - b) Until
  - c) Wherever
- 7- I will continue to use my bike \_\_\_\_\_ petrol prices remain high.
- a) As long as
  - b) Unless
  - c) Even Though
- 8- \_\_\_\_\_ he practiced the guitar every day, he was still not very good.
- a) While
  - b) Whereas
  - c) Even though
- 9- Global warming will not slow down \_\_\_\_\_ governments take serious action soon.
- a) Unless
  - b) Until
  - c) As long as
- 10- I used to live \_\_\_\_\_ you can now see that office block. They knocked my house down to build it.
- a) Since
  - b) Where
  - c) Until

The Answer



- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1- If          | 6- Until       |
| 2- In order to | 7- As long as  |
| 3- Although    | 8- Even though |
| 4- As          | 9- Unless      |
| 5- So that     | 10- Where      |



## Listening

### Questions 11 - 16

What change has been made to each part of the theatre?

Choose *SIX* answers from the box and write the correct letter, *A-G*, next to questions 11 - 16.

### RIVENDEN CITY THEATRE

- A. doubled in number
- B. given separate entrance
- C. reduced in number
- D. increased in size
- E. replaced
- F. strengthened
- G. temporarily closed

#### Part of the theatre

- 11. box office .....
- 12. shop .....
- 13. ordinary seats .....
- 14. seats for wheelchair users .....
- 15. lifts .....
- 16. dressing room .....

### Questions 17 - 20

Complete the notes below:

Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.

Play	Dates	Starting time	Tickets available	Price
Royal Hunt of the Sun	October 13 <sup>th</sup> to 17. ....	18. .... PM	For 19. .... and .....	20. £ .....

Reading

## Wind Power

**(A)** The power of the wind has been used for centuries to directly drive various machines to perform such tasks as grinding wheat or pumping water. Recently, however, the wind has joined other natural forces such as water and steam as a viable method of generating electricity.

**(B)** Traditional means of electricity generation using coal or oil-fueled plants have two major drawbacks; they pollute the environment and the fuels they use are inefficient and non-renewable. In response to growing environmental awareness there have been calls for a greener alternative. Nuclear power, while more efficient and less polluting, is seen by many people as unacceptable, because of the danger of accidents such as those that happened at Chernobyl or Three Mile Island. Wind power, however, is clean, renewable and, with modern advances, surprisingly efficient.

**(C)** In the 1970s Britain was in the forefront of research into wind power. The interest in wind diminished in the 1980s due to cheap North Sea oil, a strong pro-nuclear lobby and pricing structures that made it uneconomical to set up wind farms. Britain, the windiest country in Europe, had to wait until 1991 for its first wind farm. Located at Delabole in Cornwall, the farm was originally the idea of locals who opposed the construction of a nuclear power plant nearby and decided to set up a private company to generate power for the area using the wind. They had to fight opposition from local government and other local residents, who thought the turbines would be noisy and might interfere with television signals, but eventually, after showing local officials working wind farms in Denmark, they won and now there are 10 huge white wind turbines on the Delabole hills.

**(D)** It is in Germany and Denmark that the greatest advances in wind power have come. Germany alone produces half of the wind generated electricity in Europe. Every year Germany adds 400 Megawatts (Mw) of capacity. In 2000 alone capacity expanded by 1669 Mw. Denmark now produces 30% of its electricity from wind power and this is predicted to rise to 50% by 2010. Both countries have encouraged this growth by "fixed feed tariffs" which guarantee a good price for private wind power operators.

**(E)** Britain is catching up and the government has set a target 10% of all electricity to come from renewable sources by 2010, half of this to be from wind power. The 900 wind turbines in operation generate 400Mw of electricity and to meet the target roughly 400Mw will need to be added each year. With the advances in technology this is technically possible. Each turbine can now produce 400 Kilowatts (KW) compared to only 70 KW at the start of the 1980s. It will, however, need help from the government. This is being done by offering financial support and giving private power companies targets to meet.

**(F)** Because many people feel wind farms spoil the view and, also, because the wind is stronger at sea, many wind farms are now being built offshore. They are usually built a few kilometres off the coast in shallow water. The construction and maintenance costs are higher, but electricity output is higher. The first in Britain was built in 2000 at Blyth, north of Newcastle, and was the largest in the world until May 2001, when a 20 turbine farm was opened at Middelgruden off Copenhagen. There are plans to construct up to 18 more in the UK by 2010. Together they will produce 800 Mw of electricity annually.

**(G)** The use of wind power is far less advanced in the USA. Only 5% of America's power comes from the wind, although it is estimated that this could be increased to as high as 12% with no changes to the power grid. However, there is an increased interest in wind power. There are plans to build a huge offshore wind farm off the coast of Cape Cod on the North East seaboard. The farm will take up over 25 square miles, have 170 turbines and produce 420Mw at a cost of \$600m. If constructed, it will be the world's second biggest wind farm, after the 520Mw farm planned in Ireland.

## IELTS Sample Reading: Questions 1 – 2

*Choose the best answer to the questions below.*

1. People do not like coal and oil powered power production because ...

- A. it damages the environment.
- B. it is wasteful.
- C. they cannot be replaced once consumed.
- D. all of the above.

2. Wind power ...

- A. has only been used recently.
- B. promotes environmental awareness.
- C. cleans the environment.
- D. is not wasteful.



## IELTS Sample Reading: Questions 3 – 7

Complete the following summary of the third paragraph from the IELTS sample reading using **ONE OR TWO WORDS** from the reading texts.

### British Wind Power

While there was a great deal of interest in wind power in the 1970s, it **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ in the 1980s. This was mainly due to intense support for **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ power and little help in making wind power affordable. So, even though Britain has some of the best winds in Europe, the first wind farm was only built in 1991. The farm at Delabole came out of opposition by **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_ to a nuclear power plant. Initially, they were opposed by local officials due to fears about noise and possible obstruction to **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_. This opposition was eventually overcome only after they were shown successful examples from **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_.

## IELTS Sample Reading: Questions 8 – 13

Match the **country** below or mark **none** to the statements taken from the IELTS sample reading.

**Note:** Some countries may not be used and countries can be used more than once.

**BR** \_\_\_\_\_ Britain

**G** \_\_\_\_\_ Germany

**D** \_\_\_\_\_ Denmark

**US** \_\_\_\_\_ The United States

**IRE** \_\_\_\_\_ Ireland

**N** \_\_\_\_\_ None of the countries

8. Plans to produce 5% of its power using wind power.
9. Produces 50% of its power from wind.
10. Produces very little of its power using wind.
11. Will have the world's largest wind farm.
12. Used to have the world's biggest off-shore wind farm.
13. Is the biggest producer of wind power in Europe?

Writing

Academic Writing Task 2

You should spend about 40 minutes on this task.

Write about the following topic:

*Some of the methods used in advertising are unethical and unacceptable in today's society.*

To what extent do you agree with this view?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own experience or knowledge.

Write at least 250 words.



## IELTS Listening Answer Sheet

**Centre number:**

Pencil must be used to complete this sheet.

Please write your **full name** in CAPITAL letters on the line below:

Then write your six digit Candidate number in the boxes and shade the number in the grid on the right.



0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9



**Test date** (shade ONE box for the day, ONE box for the month and ONE box for the year):

**Day:** 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31

**Month:** 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 **Year** (last 2 digits): 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24

		Marker use only		Marker use only
1		✓ 1 x	21	✓ 21 x
2		✓ 2 x	22	✓ 22 x
3		✓ 3 x	23	✓ 23 x
4		✓ 4 x	24	✓ 24 x
5		✓ 5 x	25	✓ 25 x
6		✓ 6 x	26	✓ 26 x
7		✓ 7 x	27	✓ 27 x
8		✓ 8 x	28	✓ 28 x
9		✓ 9 x	29	✓ 29 x
10		✓ 10 x	30	✓ 30 x
11	B	✓ 11 x	31	✓ 31 x
12	G	✓ 12 x	32	✓ 32 x
13	C	✓ 13 x	33	✓ 33 x
14	A	✓ 14 x	34	✓ 34 x
15	E	✓ 15 x	35	✓ 35 x
16	D	✓ 16 x	36	✓ 36 x
17	(October (the)) 19 <sup>th</sup>	✓ 17 x	37	✓ 37 x
18	7	✓ 18 x	38	✓ 38 x
19	Monday, Thursday	✓ 19 x	39	✓ 39 x
20	18	✓ 20 x	40	✓ 40 x

Marker 2 Initials

Marker 1 Initials

Band Score

Listening Total



Please write your **full name** in CAPITAL letters on the line below:

Please write your Candidate number on the line below:

Please write your three digit language code in the boxes and shade the numbers in the grid on the right.



0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9



**Are you:** Female? ☐ Male? ☐

## Reading Reading Reading Reading Reading Reading

**Module taken** (shade one box):

Academic ☐

General Training ☐

		Marker use only			Marker use only
1	D	✓ 1 x	21		✓ 21 x
2	D	✓ 2 x	22		✓ 22 x
3	diminished	✓ 3 x	23		✓ 23 x
4	nuclear	✓ 4 x	24		✓ 24 x
5	locals	✓ 5 x	25		✓ 25 x
6	television signals	✓ 6 x	26		✓ 26 x
7	Danish Farm / Denmark	✓ 7 x	27		✓ 27 x
8	BR (Para. 5: It has a target of 10%, of which half - 5% - will be wind power)	✓ 8 x	28		✓ 28 x
9	N (Para. 4: Although Denmark is predicted to produce 50% wind power, none of the countries currently do. Don't put "G" - Germany produces 50% of the wind power in Europe, but we are not given the percentage in Germany itself)	✓ 9 x	29		✓ 29 x
10	US (Para. 7: It is much less advanced in the USA, with only 5% from wind)	✓ 10 x	30		✓ 30 x
11	IRE (Para. 7: Ireland will have the largest, then the US)	✓ 11 x	31		✓ 31 x
12	BR (Para. 6: It had the largest until the one at Middelgrunden surpassed it)	✓ 12 x	32		✓ 32 x
13	G (Para. 3: "Germany alone produces half of the wind generated electricity in Europe")	✓ 13 x	33		✓ 33 x
14		✓ 14 x	34		✓ 34 x
15		✓ 15 x	35		✓ 35 x
16		✓ 16 x	36		✓ 36 x
17		✓ 17 x	37		✓ 37 x
18		✓ 18 x	38		✓ 38 x
19		✓ 19 x	39		✓ 39 x
20		✓ 20 x	40		✓ 40 x

Marker 2	
Initials	

Marker 1	
Initials	

Band	
Score	

Reading	
Total	

## IELTS Writing Answer Sheet – TASK 1



Candidate Name

Centre Number

Candidate Number

Module (shade one box)

Academic ☐

General Training ☐

Test date

D

D

M

M

Y

Y

Y

Y

## TASK 1

The world that we live in today is dominated by advertising. Adverts are on television, on the World Wide Web, in the street and even on our mobile phones. However, many of the strategies used to sell a product or service can be considered immoral or unacceptable.

To begin with, the fact that we cannot escape from advertising is a significant cause for complaint. Constant images and signs wherever we look can be very intrusive and irritating at times. Take for example advertising on the mobile phone. With the latest technology mobile companies are now able to send advertising messages via SMS to consumers' phones whenever they choose. Although we expect adverts in numerous situations, it now seems that there are very few places we can actually avoid them.

Do not write below this line

A further aspect of advertising that I would consider unethical is the way that it encourages people to buy products they may not need or cannot afford. Children and young people in particular are influenced by adverts showing the latest toys, clothing or music and this can put enormous pressure on the parents to buy these products.

In addition, the advertising of tobacco products and alcohol has long been a controversial issue, but cigarette adverts have only recently been banned in many countries. It is quite possible that alcohol adverts encourage excessive consumption and underage drinking, yet restrictions have not been placed on this type of advertising in the same way as smoking.

It is certainly true to say that advertising is an everyday feature of our lives. Therefore, people are constantly being encouraged to buy products or services that might be too expensive, unnecessary or even unhealthy. In conclusion, many aspects of advertising do appear to be morally wrong and are not acceptable in today's society.

Do not write below this line

## OFFICIAL USE ONLY

Candidate Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--

TA

CC

LR

GRA

Examiner 2 Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--

Underlength

No. of words

Penalty

Off-topic

Memorised

Illegible

Candidate Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--

TA

CC

LR

GRA

Examiner 1 Number:

--	--	--	--	--	--

Underlength

No. of words

Penalty

Off-topic

Memorised

Illegible

في هذا الموضوع كتبنا ما يقارب من 300 كلمة، ستلاحظ ان الموضوع منظم ومكون من 5 فقرات واضحة، كل فقرة ذات صلة مباشرة بالنقطة الأساسية بالموضوع وهي أخلاقية الإعلانات وطريقة استخدامها في زمننا الحالي... ورأينا دائماً نقدمه بطريقة منطقية فنقول مثلاً:

- A further aspect of advertising that I would consider unethical...

ونوضح السبب لاحقاً ونقول:

- encourages people to buy products they may not need or cannot afford

ونوفر أمثلة مثل:

- Children and young people in particular, are influenced by adverts

فدائماً يحب أن نراعي أننا عندما نقول رأي ما، لا نقوله مثلما هو فقط، يجب أن نعطي أسباب، أدلة وأمثلة.



## Speaking

### IELTS Speaking Examples

Describe a present you have given someone.

You should say:

- Who you gave it to
- What kind of present it was
- How it compared to other presents you have given

Explain why you decided to give this particular gift.

### IELTS Speaking Examples - Model Answer

I'm going to talk about a present that I gave to someone.

**The person that I gave it to was** a very good friend of mine at the time. His name was Kaaliya and he came from India. I knew him because we studied together at a language school in Cambridge. Although we were from different backgrounds and cultures, we got on really well and we had the same sense of humour so we became very good friends.

**The present was a picture** that had been painted of the River Cam in Cambridge. It was not so big - maybe around 10 inches by 14 inches, but it was very beautiful. It came in a gold plated frame and the picture had been drawn by a particularly well-known Cambridge artist. It had been signed by this person as well.

It's the first time I have given this person a present, and I guess **it's quite different from presents that I have given to other people before** – I don't recall ever giving someone a picture actually. If I'm buying for family then I'll usually buy clothes or maybe some jewelry if it is a special occasion. Normally when I've bought something for friends it's something more jokey so we can have a laugh about it, nothing that serious.

**The reason why I decided to give this particular gift is**

because we had spent a lot of time together in Cambridge and we had had some really fun times punting on the River Cam – that's obviously why I thought this was an appropriate present. We used to go punting at least once a week, sometimes a couple of times. On one occasion there was a group of about ten of us that went down there, and we spent the whole day sitting by the river in the sun and as usual we went on a boat trip together. We all have a lot of photos to remind us of this great day.

So my friend, Kaaliya, is the person that I gave a present to and this was because I felt it would always remind him of the fun times that we had and also of Cambridge.



## IELTS Speaking Examples

Describe an old person that you know.

You should say:

- What your relationship is to this person
- How often you see them
- What people think about this person

Explain why you like them.

## IELTS Speaking Examples - Model Answer

**Ok, I'd like to tell you about** an old person that I know.

His name is John, and he is the owner of a small convenience store at the end of my street.

**I would say that my relationship with him** is as a friend. I know him because I regularly go to the shop in order to buy things when I don't have time to go to a supermarket. He's quite friendly and I always have a chat with him. I've known him now for about five years - since I've lived in the area in fact. That's why I'd now call him a friend.

**I'd say that I see him fairly regularly.** Like I said, I go to the big supermarket out of town sometimes to stock up, but you always need odd things during the week such as milk, or some snack or other. So when this happens I just have a walk down to his shop. So I'd say I see him every one or two days.

**I think John is pretty popular** as he's been there for years as far as I'm aware, so most of the locals around the area know him. There will always be someone in the shop having a chat with him. They like him because he's not just the shopkeeper but he's also very involved in activities in the community. For example, I know he helps out at the old people's home some nights, and he runs the quizzes at the local pub. He also helps to organize the fete that is held each year in the town.

**The reason that I like him is** that he's great to have a chat with. For instance, a while back I was having problems with my work, and I was really feeling stressed. I didn't really have anyone to talk to at the time as my family is abroad and a couple of my good friends were not around. I mentioned it to John and he was great. He listened and also gave me some really good advice. He didn't need to do that so it was great that he made the time to anyway. Generally, though, he's really welcoming when you go to his shop. He'll always have a smile on his face.





## IELTS Speaking Examples

Describe an old person that you know.

You should say:

- When it happened
- Who was involved
- How you felt at the time

Explain why you remember this particular occasion.

## IELTS Speaking Examples - Model Answer

**I'm going to talk about** a happy childhood event that I remember, and that event was my 13th birthday.

**It was 10 years ago now** because I'm 23. My birthday is on the 7th May. What happened was my parents surprised me on my birthday by telling me that they were going to take me to a theme park that is a few hours from our house. I'd never been before - it had only been open a few months and they knew that I really wanted to go. As I recall it was a Saturday that we went. They didn't tell me until the morning when I woke up that day.

**My whole family was involved in the event.** I have a brother and a sister so of course they came as well as my Mum and Dad, and not only that, we also picked up my grandparents on the way so they could join us. They were too old to go on the rides but it was still a great trip out for them!

The theme park was really amazing. There was a huge roller coaster which I remember was really scary but still excellent fun. One particular thing I remember is the ghost train. My younger sister was not allowed to go on the ride because she was too young and she was really upset and jealous of me and my brother! I think it was lucky she didn't though. It was really realistic – there were real people in there who were actually dressed up as ghosts and they jumped out just when you weren't expecting it – it made us jump so many times!

**How I felt really depended on what I was doing.** Obviously I was excited the whole day, but I remember that I felt really exhilarated when I was on the rides such as the roller coaster, and scared but still excited on the ghost train.

**The reason that I remember it so well is** that I had been so desperate to go to the theme park and I'd been talking to my friends at school for ages about how I wanted to go. So it was so great when I found out that I could. Also I remember it so well because all of our family was together. My Dad was pretty busy most of the time with his work so we didn't always have much time to do things together when I was a younger.

So for these reasons, it was a really special occasion that I'll never forget.

## IELTS Speaking Examples

Describe an environmental problem that has occurred in your country.

You should say:

- The cause of the problem
- What effect it has had on your country
- The steps, if any, that have been taken to solve this

Explain why you think this problem is so important to solve.

## IELTS Speaking Examples - Model Answer

Ok, I'm going to talk about a problem with the environment in my country.

**One of the most serious problems at the moment is** flooding. This is starting to happen every year and each year it seems to get worse. I think it may be caused by a number of factors. Firstly there has been a lot of deforestation in the north of the country, a lot of it from illegal logging. Because of this, when it rains the water has nothing to soak it up so it just runs down the mountains and into the villages and towns. Another factor may be global warming. Scientists believe that this is causing more severe weather so this may account for the increasing amount of rain that we seem to be seeing. It also means the soil is more dry so again the rain water runs off it rather than being soaked up.

**Unfortunately, there have been really serious effects on my country.** As I said, the excess water runs into the villages and the towns through the rivers and the rivers then overflow causing massive flooding. This effects thousands of people who then become homeless. Several hundred usually die each year as well. It travels through the country as it starts in the north and goes down to the sea, so it can affect many towns and the capital city too. This also has repercussions for the government as they have to spend so much money managing the disaster each year.

**The government is trying to tackle the problem,** but it is not easy. They are trying to stop so much deforestation but a lot of the damage has already been done so what can they do? They are also starting to build defences such as walls along some of the major rivers that run through the town to try to stop them overflowing. Another thing they are doing is trying to improve their response systems. In most towns there is now a government organization responsible for coordinating relief operations and making sure they are prepared in advance.

**I think this problem is a top priority to solve because** it has such devastating impacts. As I mentioned before, it causes suffering for so many people and it is also a huge expense for the government and as we are not a rich country we cannot afford this. It means that other services suffer because of a lack of money. There are other problems that my country has but I think that is by far the worst.

So, that is the serious problem in my country, and I only hope that it does not continue to get worse.



### Tips and Tricks

الموضوع الذي سيسألك فيه الممتحن لا يمكنك تغييره، لذلك يجب أن تدرب على المواضيع ليكون لديك الخبرة الكافية.

أول شيء يجب أن تركز عليه هو أنك تتكلم عن الموضوع الذي أمامك وتغطي كل النقاط التي سيسألك الممتحن فيها مثلما مذكور في النماذج السابقة، وبعد ذلك يمكنك أن تضيف شيء له علاقة بالموضوع الذي أمامك.

في الدقيقة التي ستفكر بها يمكنك عمل التالي:

- فكر في إجابات لـ **Wh-Questions** مثل (When / What / Who / How / Where / Where).
- فكر في قصة ممتعة تقولها عن الشخص، المكان، الحدث أو الموضوع الذي ستناقشونه.



### Example 1

In this situation, a woman is booking a journey into town for when she arrives at Toronto Airport. You have to note down the distance of the town, Milton, from the airport.

Take a look at the information you have to find in the question. Below that is a copy of the listening script that you would hear.

#### Fill in the blanks:

Distance ..... miles

-----

MAN: Hello, this is Land Transport Information at Toronto Airport. How may I help you?

WOMAN: Oh, good morning. I'm flying to Toronto Airport next week, and I need to get to a town called Milton. Could you tell me how I can get there?

MAN: Milton, did you say? Let me see. *I think that's about 150 miles* south-west of here. In fact it's 147 miles to be exact, so it will take you at least – say, three to four hours by road.

الجزء السماعي لن تجده مكتوب في ورقة الامتحان، يرجى سماعه بتركيز.  
لسماع هذا الجزء اضغط هنا



## Example 2

Here is another example, further on in the same listening when the woman is arranging to book a hire car to make the journey when she arrives.

**Fill in the blanks:**

**Question:** Date of booking .....

-----

MAN: OK, I just have to fill out this form for you. So what date do you want to book this for?

WOMAN: The *16<sup>th</sup> of October* – oh, no, sorry, that's my departure date. I arrive on the 17<sup>th</sup>, so book it for then, please.

الجزء السمعي لن تجده مكتوب في ورقة الامتحان، يرجى سماعه بتركيز.  
لسماع هذا الجزء اضغط هنا



## Example 3

Here is another example taken from another real IELTS test. Here, a careers advisor is trying to help a student to find a part-time job.

**Question:**  
**Fill in the blanks:**

-----

Position available	Where	Problem
Position available	.....	Evening Lectures

**ADVISOR:** But you'd need to be there at 6 am. Does that appeal?

**STUDENT:** Six o'clock in the morning! Oh, that's far too early for me, I'm afraid. I'd never make it that early in the morning.

**ADVISOR:** Mmm...Well – there was a position going *in the Computer Lab*. for three days a week that might be OK. Ah, here it is! No, *it's in the Library*, not the Lab. Clerical Assistant required – I think it mostly involves putting the books back on the shelves. Oh no – hang on. It's for Wednesday and Friday evening instead.

**STUDENT:** No, I can't manage that because of the lectures.

الجزء السماعي لن تجده مكتوب في ورقة الامتحان، يرجى سماعه بتركيز.  
لسماع هذا الجزء اضغط هنا





### Example 4

This final example is part of the same test as above.

The advisor is trying to find out the student's room number.

#### Question:

#### Fill in the blanks:

Room number .....

-----

**STUDENT:** I'm in one of the Halls of Residence for post-graduate students, you know, International House.

**ADVISOR:** OK – that's easy. What's your room number there?

**STUDENT:** *Room B569* – no sorry B659. I always get that wrong. I haven't been living there very long.

**ADVISOR:** Do you have any other skills? Typing , languages, that sort of thing?

الجزء السمعي لن تجده مكتوب في ورقة الامتحان، يرجى سماعه بتركيز.  
لسماع هذا الجزء اضغط هنا



#### Tips and Tricks

- في الجزء الأول من اختبار الاستماع ستجد الكثير من ال distracts التي تحدثنا عنهم سابقًا.
- لا تعتقد أن أول شيء ستسمعه سيكون الإجابة، انتبه جيدًا للكلام الذي يقال.
- كلمات مثل no و sorry يخبروك أنه من الممكن أن يكون هناك إجابة ثانية تليهم لتصحيح الإجابة الأولى.
- أحيانًا سيكون هناك اختلاف في الأرقام، ركز جيدًا.
- انتبه جيدًا لكل شيء يقال.

## Community<sub>(n)</sub>

the people living in one particular area or people who are considered as a unit because of their common interests, social group, or nationality

- There's a real sense of **community** (= caring and friendly feeling) in this neighbourhood.
- The **community** has set up a campaign to save the park.
- I'm sure our **community** could keep you in work for some time... even if you caused a good deal of trouble.

## Complex<sub>(adj)</sub>

difficult to understand or find an answer to because of having many different parts

- The film's plot was so **complex** that I couldn't follow it.
- If it gets **complex**, everything can go wrong

## Computer<sub>(n)</sub>

an electronic machine that is used for storing, organizing, and finding words, numbers, and pictures, for doing calculations, and for controlling other machines

- Modern **computers** can hold huge amounts of information.
- She'll sit in her room, never come out, play on her **computer**.

## Conclusion<sub>(n)</sub>

the last part of something

- The team was exhausted at the **conclusion** of the game.
- After I finished my essay, I wrote a **conclusion**.
- If nine of us look at the same information and arrive at the exact same **conclusion**, it's the duty of the tenth man to disagree.

## Conduct<sub>(v)</sub>

to organize and perform a particular activity

to guide, lead, direct, do or carry out

- How you choose to **conduct** your private life is your own business!
- Give me that glass of water. We'll **conduct** an experiment.

## Consequences<sub>(n)</sub>

a result of a particular action or situation, often one that is bad or not convenient

- If people continued destroying nature like this, it will lead to severe **consequences** in the future.
- Part of growing up is making your own decisions and living with the **consequences**.

## Construction<sub>(n)</sub>

is the process of making something, the occupation of building or the way that something is put together...

an example of construction is the art of making homes and businesses

an example of construction is how a sentence is put together using words

- She wants to participate in the **construction** of the new buildings initiated by the government.
- They will actively participate onsite, during the **construction** process.

## Credit card

- Your **credit card** is no longer valid.
- You get **credit** for trying.

**Credit**<sub>(n)</sub>

the balance in a person's favor in an account

- I thought I had **credit** in my bank account but I found out that I don't have a bean! I'm broke!

praise or honour

- She got no **credit** for solving the problem.

**Consumer**<sub>(n)</sub>

a person who buys goods or services for their own use

- American **consumers** are becoming informed about the safety of products made for children.
- Suppose that he's an undercover agent for the **consumer** protection agency.

**Cultural**<sub>(adj)</sub>

relating to the habits, traditions, and beliefs of a society

- Australia has its own **cultural** identity, which is very different from that of Britain.
- I work at the American Library of **Cultural** History.





### Choose the correct answer

- 1- The people living in one particular area or people who are considered as a unit because of their common interests, social group, or nationality.
  - a) Community
  - b) Construction
  - c) Complex
- 2- A result of a particular action or situation, often one that is bad or not convenient.
  - a) Complex
  - b) Construction
  - c) Consequences
- 3- Relating to the habits, traditions, and beliefs of a society.
  - a) Credit
  - b) Conclude
  - c) Cultural
- 4- A person who buys goods or services for their own use.
  - a) Conduct
  - b) Consumer
  - c) Conclusion
- 5- The last part of something.
  - a) Conclusion
  - b) Conclude
  - c) Community
- 6- The process of making something, the occupation of building or the way that something is put together.
  - a) Construction
  - b) Conclude
  - c) Cultural

7- The balance in a person's favor in an account.

- a) Credit
- b) Consumer
- c) Construction

8- To organize and perform a particular activity

- a) Consume
- b) Conclude
- c) Conduct

9- An electronic machine that is used for storing, organizing, and finding words, numbers, and pictures, for doing calculations, and for controlling other machines.

- a) Computer
- b) Community
- c) Conclusion

10- Difficult to understand or find an answer to because of having many different parts

- a) Cultural
- b) Credit
- c) Complex

## The Answer



- 1- Community
- 2- Consequences
- 3- Cultural
- 4- Consumer
- 5- Conclusion

- 6- Construction
- 7- Credit
- 8- Conduct
- 9- Computer
- 10- Complex



## Academic Word List

### Community

Communities

### Complex

Complexities

Complexity

### Compute

Computation

Computational

Computations

Computable

Computer

Computed

Computerised

Computers

Computing

### Conclude

Concluded

Concludes

Concluding

Conclusion

Conclusions

Conclusive

### Conduct

Conducted

Conducting

Conducts

Consequent

Consequence

Consequences

Consequently

### Construct

Constructed

Constructing

Construction

Constructions

Constructive

Constructs

Reconstruct

Reconstructed

Reconstructing

Reconstruction

Reconstructs

### Consume

Consumed

Consumer

Consumers

Consumes

Consuming

Consumption

### Credit

Credited

Crediting

Creditor

Creditors

Credits

### Culture

Cultural

Culturally

Cultured

Cultures

Uncultured



## Relative Clause

Relative clause تعرف باسم جملة الصلة في اللغة العربية وهي الجملة التي تبدأ ب (who / which / that / whose).

Relative clause هي التي تشرح ال Noun الذي يسبقها، وتأتي بعد ال Noun مباشرة

- The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.  
في الجملة السابقة ال Relative clause يشير ل the car
- The car is in the garage, which is locked.  
في الجملة السابقة ال Relative clause يشير ل the garage

Relative clause تكون Dependent clause مثال:

- The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.  
Relative clause هي which is my father's  
Dependent clause هي The car is in the garage

ال Verb مع ال Relative clause يجب ان يتفق مع ال Noun الذي يتكلم عنه، أي أن إذا كان ال Noun مفرد يكون ال Verb مفرد ، وإذا كان ال Noun جمع يكون ال Verb جمع أيضًا.

- The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.  
لاحظ ان ال Noun مفرد لذلك وضعنا is ال Verb.





الـ Relative clause يأتي أيضًا كـ Extra information أي معلومات زيادة عن الـ Noun الذي يليه، ولذلك نضع two commas، مثال:

- The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.

ولكن إذا كانت المعلومات المضافة ضرورية فلن نحتاج لإضافة commas كما في المثال التالي:

- The car which is in front of the house is mine.

في الجملة السابقة which حددت لنا أي سيارة نقصدها بالضبط، وبدونها سيكون الشيء المذكور في الجملة غير محدد بالضبط، مثال:

The car is mine.

الجملة التي تكون الـ Relative clause بها ضرورية، نستبدل which أو who بـ that، مثال:

- The police have not found the person that stole my car.





### Choose the correct answer

- 1- The car which is my father's is in the garage.  
What kind of clause is that?
  - a) Adverbial clause
  - b) Relative clause
  - c) Noun clause
- 2- Which sentence of the following is correct?
  - a) The car which is in front of the house is mine.
  - b) The car, which is in front of the house, is mine.
  - c) The car, which, is in front of the house is mine.
- 3- Which sentence of the following is correct?
  - a) The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.
  - b) The car which is my father's is in the garage.
  - c) The car ,which, is my father's is in the garage.
- 4- How many clauses are there in this sentence ?  
The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.
  - a) One
  - b) Two
  - c) Three
- 5- The car, which is my father's, is in the garage.  
Which part of these is the dependent clause?
  - a) The car
  - b) Which is my father's
  - c) Is in the garage
- 6- Which of the following is considered a fragment?
  - a) The car is mine.
  - b) The car is in the garage.
  - c) Which is my father's

- 7- The clause that comes after a noun to modify it is.....
- a) Adverbial clause
  - b) Relative clause
  - c) Noun clause
- 8- Which of the following is considered an essential clause
- a) The police have not found the person that stole my car.
  - b) My car, which is a Mercedes, can reach speeds of 140 km per hour.
  - c) My grandmother, who is 86 years old, is coming on holiday with us this year.
- 9- Which of the following is considered a non essential clause?
- a) That is the woman who stole my car.
  - b) That is the book I read.
  - c) My grandmother, who is 86 years old, is coming on holiday with us this year.
- 10-How many types of complex sentences are there?
- a) one
  - b) Two
  - c) Three

## The Answer



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1- Relative clause                                  | 6- Which is my father's   |
| 2- The car which is in front of the house is mine.  | 7- Relative clause  |
| 3- The car, which is my father's, is in the garage. | 8- The police have not found the person that stole my car.                      |
| 4- Two  | 9- My grandmother, who is 86 years old, is coming on holiday with us this year. |
| 5- Which is my father's                             | 10-Three  |

## Design

A drawing or set of drawings showing how a building or product is to be made and how it will work and look

- Have you seen the **designs** for the new shopping center?
- Graphic **designers** are widely needed in today's world.
- But all truly inspiring **design** projects have one thing in common: they began with a dream.

## Distinction

A difference between two similar things

- There's a clear **distinction** between the dialects spoken in the two regions.
- And in my book, I make a **distinction** between empathy and compassion.

## Element

An important basic part of something complicated

- Our new management system includes two essential **elements**.
- The four **elements** of western culture are: EARTH, AIR, FIRE, and WATER. These four **elements** were believed to be essential to life
- The musical director is key **element** of the team.

## Equation

A mathematical statement saying that two amounts or values are the same

- And I'll control both sides of the **equation**.

## Evaluation

A systematic determination of a subject's merit, worth and significance, using criteria governed by a set of standards

- This exam will be a real **evaluation** for the work you have done through the past three months.
- The first form of listening before **evaluation** is simply listening to understand.

## Features

One of the parts of someone's face that you notice when you look at them

- He has wonderful strong **features**.
- The map shows all the important geographical **features** of the region.
- Your **features** are so masculine.

## Final

not to be altered or undone

- The modifications I've made to this file are **final**.
- **final** exams.
- Your final meal before your **final** fight.

## Focus

A center of activity, attraction, or attention

- The baby had become the **focus** of all her attention.
- My view was that we should never lose **focus** of that objective to grow.

### Impact

A powerful effect that something, especially something new, has on a situation or person

- The anti-smoking campaign had made quite an **impact** on young people.
- Every human being has an **impact** on another.

### Injury

harm or damage that is done or sustained

- Hikers must take strong precautions to prevent **injury**.
- Doctor, what is more serious, a head injury or a foot **injury**?





Choose the correct answer

- 1- Difference between two similar things.
  - a) Distinction
  - b) Design
  - c) Designers
- 2- A powerful effect that something, especially something new, has on a situation or person.
  - a) Evaluation
  - b) Equation
  - c) Impact
- 3- A center of activity, attraction, or attention
  - a) Injury
  - b) Focus
  - c) Final
- 4- One of the parts of someone's face that you notice when you look at them.
  - a) Focus
  - b) Elements
  - c) Features
- 5- A systematic determination of a subject's merit, worth and significance, using criteria governed by a set of standards.
  - a) Evaluation
  - b) Equation
  - c) Design
- 6- A mathematical statement saying that two amounts or values are the same
  - a) Equation
  - b) Elements
  - c) Impact

**7-** Harm or damage that is done or sustained

- a) Impact
- b) Injured
- c) Injury

**8-** Not to be altered or undone

- a) Final
- b) Impact
- c) Injury

**9-** A drawing or set of drawings showing how a building or product is to be made and how it will work and look.

- a) Designer
- b) Designed
- c) Design

**10-** An important basic part of something complicated

- a) Element
- b) Evaluation
- c) Equation

## The Answer



**1-** Distinction

**2-** Impact

**3-** Focus

**4-** Features

**5-** Evaluation

**6-** Equation

**7-** Injury

**8-** Final

**9-** Design

**10-** Element





## Academic Word List

### Design

Designed  
Designer  
Designers  
Designing  
Designs

### Distinct

Distinction  
Distinctions  
Distinctive  
Distinctively  
Distinctly  
Indistinct  
Indistinctly

### Element

Elements

### Equate

Equated

Equates

Equating

Equation

Equations

### Evaluate

Evaluated

Evaluates

Evaluating

Evaluation

Evaluations

Evaluative

Re-evaluate

Re-evaluated

Re-evaluates

Re-evaluating

Re-evaluation

### Feature

Featured

Features

Featuring

### Final

Finalise

Finalised

Finalises

Finalising

Finalize

Finalized

Finalizes

Finalizing

Finality

Finally

Finals

### Focus

Focused

Focuses

Focusing

Focussed

Focussing

Refocus

Refocused

Refocuses

Refocusing

Refocussed

Refocusses

Refocussing

### Impact

Impacted

Impacting

Impacts

### Injure

Injured

Injures

Injuries

Injuring

Injury

Uninjured



**Complex Sentences** تتكون من **Two Clauses** أو أكثر، ولكن المقاطع بها تكون مربوطة ببعضها عن طريق الـ **Subordinating Conjunctions** وهي تشبه أدوات الربط في اللغة العربية.

Unless	If	As long as	While
Even if	As	Where	So that
After	Whenever	Once	As though
Until	In order to	As much as	That
Even though	As if	Wherever	Because
Although	Whereas	Since	Though
When	In case	As soon as	Before

- I went to bed **as soon as** he left **because** I was tired.
- Our children may not be properly educated **if** we don't spend more on schools.

## Usage

### To show time

**After / When / Before / While / Until**  
**As soon as**

- I always eat **before** I go to bed.

### To show place

**If / Unless**

- You can't go home, **unless** it's an emergency.

### To show cause, reason or effect

**Because / Since / So that**

- I only drank that much water **because** I was thirsty.

### To show condition

**Where / Wherever**

- He never eats **where** he sleeps.

يمكن ان نبدأ الجملة بـ **Subordinating Conjunctions**.

- **When** you finish work, let's meet.

**Compound-Complex Sentences** يتكون من **Complex Sentence + Compound or Simple Sentence**.

- I ate alot **when** I got home, **but** I was still hungry.



## Choose the correct answer

1- I'm staying in \_\_\_\_\_ it's past curfew.

- a) When
- b) Because
- c) Unless

2- Please let me know \_\_\_\_\_ you find out.

- a) Although
- b) As if
- c) If

3- You will recognize her \_\_\_\_\_ you see her.

- a) As much as
- b) Now that
- c) When

4- He didn't complain at all \_\_\_\_\_ he could keep his job.

- a) Even though
- b) So that
- c) Until

5- Did she say anything \_\_\_\_\_ she left?

- a) After
- b) While
- c) Before

6- I met them \_\_\_\_\_ we were in Paris.

- a) Where
- b) When
- c) Wherever

7- They must turn to the left \_\_\_\_\_ they pass the town.

- a) As soon as
- b) As long as
- c) Because

8- They will not pass the math exam \_\_\_\_\_ they work harder.

- a) Because
- b) Unless
- c) If

9- I hate broccoli \_\_\_\_\_ I hate cauliflower.

- a) As long as
- b) Because
- c) As much as

10- You can keep my notebook \_\_\_\_\_ you need it.

- a) As much as
- b) As long as
- c) Unless

### The Answer



- 1- Because
- 2- If
- 3- When
- 4- So that
- 5- Before

- 6- When
- 7- As soon as
- 8- Unless
- 9- As much as
- 10- As long as



## Institute

an organization or association designed to study or promote something

- High Cinema **Institute**
- They founded an **institute** for research into the causes of mental illness.
- You've done a wonderful job here at the **Institute**.

## Invest

to put money, effort, time, etc. into something to make a profit or get an advantage usually in the future

- The institute will **invest** five millions in the project.
- Why would I want to **invest** that kind of money in an old building

## Item

something that is part of a list or group of things

- The restaurant has a long menu of about 50 **items**.
- This **item** is non returnable

## Journal

a newspaper

- The Wall Street **Journal**.

a record of experiences, ideas, or reflections kept regularly for private use: DIARY

- She records her dreams in a **journal**.
- You should read my **journal**.

## Maintain

to keep in an existing state (as of repair, efficiency, or validity) : preserve from failure or decline

- He has found it difficult to **maintain** a healthy weight.
- Because unlike you, I'm not useless, and I **maintain** my own property.

## Normal

Ordinary or usual; the same as would be expected

- Tomorrow won't be off, it's a **normal** working day.
- Bruce, don't make me your one hope for **normal** life.

## Obtain

to get something, especially by asking for it, buying it, working for it.

- In the second experiment they **obtained** a very clear result.
- Trying to **obtain** this valuable information.

## Participate

to have a part or share in something

- Most people joined the game, but a few chose not to **participate**.
- You are going to **participate** in a great adventure.

## Positive

if you are positive about things, you are hopeful and confident, and think of the good aspects of a situation rather than the bad ones.

- The book had a **positive** influence on me.
- We need **positive** energy.

## Perceive

to come to an opinion about something, or have a belief about something

- Since young children often **perceive** images differently than adults do, you should not be surprised if your child's view of a photograph differs from yours.
- I mean, really, tell me, why do we require a trip to Mount Everest... in order to be able to **perceive** one moment of reality.



## Choose the correct answer

- 1- To put money, effort, time, etc. into something to make a profit or get an advantage usually in the future.
  - a) Invest
  - b) Perceive
  - c) Participate
- 2- Being hopeful and confident, and thinking of the good aspects of a situation rather than the bad ones.
  - a) Positive
  - b) Institute
  - c) Maintain
- 3- An organization or association designed to study or promote something.
  - a) Institute
  - b) Normal
  - c) Item
- 4- To get something, especially by asking for it, buying it, working for it.
  - a) Maintain
  - b) Perceive
  - c) Obtain

**5- Ordinary or usual; the same as would be expected**

- a) Normal
- b) Institute
- c) Item

**6- To have a part or share in something**

- a) Participation
- b) Participate
- c) Perceive

**7- Something that is part of a list or group of things**

- a) Item
- b) Positive
- c) Normal

**8- To come to an opinion about something, or have a belief about something**

- a) Perceive
- b) Participate
- c) Obtain

**9- To keep in an existing state (as of repair, efficiency, or validity) : preserve from failure or decline**

- a) Maintain
- b) Obtain
- c) Perceive

**10-A record of experiences, ideas, or reflections kept regularly for private use : DIARY**

- a) Journal
- b) Normal
- c) Item





The Answer



- 1- Invest
- 2- Positive
- 3- Institute
- 4- Obtain
- 5- Normal

- 6- Participate
- 7- Item
- 8- Perceive
- 9- Maintain
- 10- Journal





## Academic Word List

### Invest

Invested  
Investing  
Investment  
Investments  
Investor  
Investors  
Invests  
Reinvest  
Reinvested  
Reinvesting  
Reinvestment  
Reinvests

### Item

Itemisation  
Itemise

Itemised  
Itemises  
Itemising  
Items

### Journal

Journals

### Maintain

Maintained  
Maintaining  
Maintains  
Maintenance

### Normal

Abnormal  
Abnormally  
Normalisation  
Normalise

Normalised  
Normalises  
Normalising  
Normalization  
Normalize  
Normalized  
Normalizes  
Normalizing  
Normality  
Normally

### Obtain

Obtainable  
Obtained  
Obtaining  
Obtains  
Unobtainable

### Participate

Participant  
Participants  
Participated  
Participates  
Participating  
Participation  
Participatory

### Perceive

Perceived  
Perceives  
Perceiving  
Perception  
Perceptions

### Positive

Positively



## Modal Verbs

### Modal Verbs

May | Might | Can | Could | Shall | Should | Must

- She **can** swim.
- **Can** she swim?
- She **can** not swim.

### Semi Modal Verbs

Ought | Need | Have

- She **has** to go.
- Does she **have** to go?
- She doesn't **have** to go.

ال Modal Verbs تستخدم مع الفعل الأساسي في الجملة، مثل (go/swim/play) مباشرة بدون أي حرف جر، فمثلاً:

- She **can** swim.  
She **can** to swim.

ولكن لدينا أفعال مثل ( need / have / ought ) يجب أن يليهم حرف الجر to مثل:

- She **has** to go.  
She **has** go.



Modal Verbs ال تسمى أفعال مساعدة، وتستخدم مع فعل الجملة الأساسي ولا تستخدم منفردة، لأن وظائفهم إعطاء معلومات إضافية للفعل الأساسي في الجملة، وتستخدم في:

## Degrees of certainty

للتعبير عن نسبة تأكيدنا لشيء ما مع ( **could** / **can** / **might** / **will** )

- Children with no father as a role model **will** become criminals. (100%)
- Children with no father as a role model **may** become criminals. (Possible)
- Children with no father as a role model **could** become criminals. (Possible)

الجملة الأولى صحيحة من ناحية الجرامر ولكن **will** تدل على حدوث الشيء بنسبة 100%، لذلك ليس من المنطق أن نفترض أن كل الأطفال الذين ليس لديهم أب كقدوة سيكونون مجرمون. إذا لا نستخدم **will** إلا في شيء نسبة تأكيدنا منه 100%، لأن عندنا وسائل أخرى للتعبير عن الاحتمالية، ولذلك فإن الجملتين التاليتين يكونان صحيحتين.

## Suggestions

لتقديم الإقتراحات لحل مشكلة ما، ونستخدم...  
**must** | **should** | **ought to** | **have to** | **could**

- Governments **must**/**have to**/**need to** take action to tackle global warming.
- Parents **should**/**ought to** stop their children watching too much television.
- Individuals **could** recycle more.

## Hypothetical situations

للتعبير عن أشياء لم تحدث بالفعل، ولكن في الحقيقة تستخدم لتخيل هؤلاء الأشياء

- If the government spent more money on hospitals, people **would** be healthier.



Choose the correct answer

- 1- Which sentence of the following is incorrect?
  - a) She has to go
  - b) She has go
  - c) She can go
  
- 2- Which sentence of the following is not acceptable?
  - a) Children with no father as a role model will become criminals.
  - b) Children with no father as a role model may become criminals.
  - c) Children with no father as a role model could become criminals.
  
- 3- Which sentence of the following is correct?
  - a) Parents ought to stop their children watching too much television.
  - b) Parents ought stop their children watching too much television.
  - c) Parents should to stop their children watching too much television.
  
- 4- What are modal verbs used for?
  - a) Hypothetical situations
  - b) Making suggestions
  - c) A,B
  
- 5- Which of the following sentences is expressing possibility?
  - a) She may go to the party
  - b) She should go to party
  - c) She will go to the party
  
- 6- Which of the following sentences is expressing certainty?
  - a) He will possibly go to the club
  - b) He will go to the club
  - c) He could go to the club

- 7- If the government spent more money on hospitals, people would be healthier.  
We consider this sentence as :
- Suggestion
  - Hypothetical situation
  - Certain situation
- 8- Which of the following sentences contains a modal verb?
- She is going to travel to luxor
  - She will travel to luxor
  - She is travelling to luxor
- 9- Which of the following sentences is using a modal verb which expresses a certainty degree?
- She will possibly join us in an hour
  - She have to join us in an hour
  - She should join us in an hour
- 10- Which of the following sentences is expressing suggestion?
- He should take care of his plants.
  - He is able to take care of his plants.
  - He is going to take care of his plants in the future.

## The Answer



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1- She has go   | 5- She may go to the party              |
| 2- Children with no father as a role model will become criminals.     | 6- He will possibly go to the club      |
| 3- Parents ought to stop their children watching too much television. | 7- Hypothetical situation               |
| 4- A,B  | 8- She will travel to luxor             |
|   | 9- She will possibly join us in an hour |
|   | 10- He should take care of his plants.  |